Thank you very much for choosing a new Chery vehicle.

In order to correctly operate and maintain your vehicle, please take the time to read this manual carefully.

After reading, please leave the manual in the vehicle for future reference. Please leave this manual in the vehicle at the same time of resale, as the new owner will also need to read the information in it.

All the information and specifications in this manual are current at the time of printing.

Remember that Chery authorized service station knows your vehicle best and has factory-trained technicians and OEM parts to guarantee your safety. Do not use non-OEM parts or accessories to modify your vehicle. Modifying will affect the functionality, safety and durability of your vehicle.

According to the specification of equipment and features of your vehicle, some descriptions and illustrations may differ from that on your vehicle.

Any data, descriptions and illustrations provided in this manual cannot be used as the basis for any insurance claim.

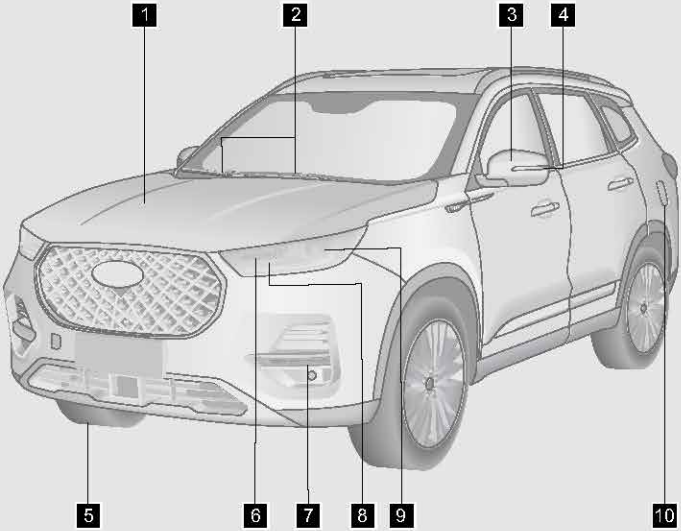
Chery Automobile Co., Ltd. reserves the right to make changes in design and specifications at any time without notice.

All rights reserved. This document should not be reproduced or copied, in whole or inpart, without the written permission of Chery Automobile Co., Ltd.

Happy driving!

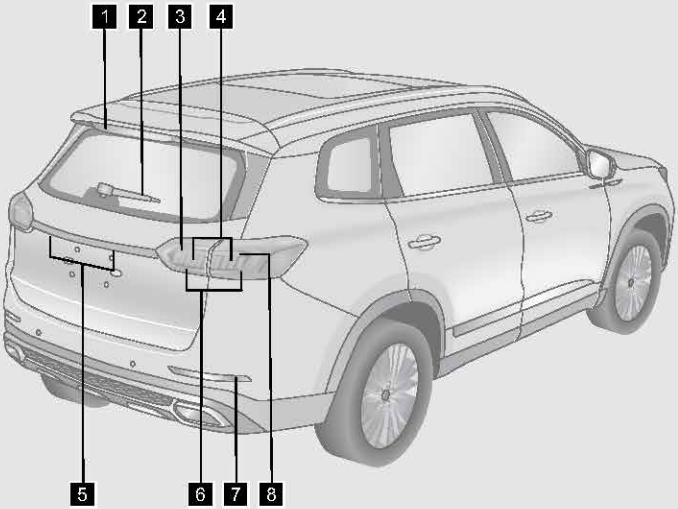
Version No: T1DOM23EN02
Issued September 2023

Type A



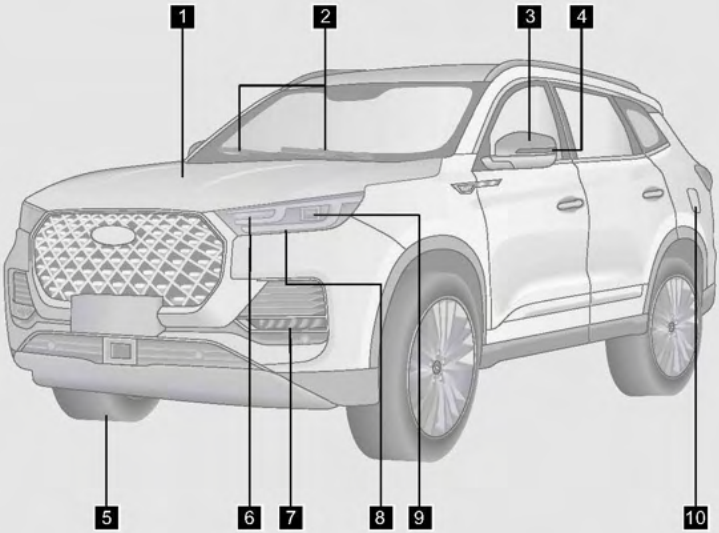
1 Hood P.178
2 Front Wiper Blade P.67
3 Outside Rear View Mirror P.61
4 Side Turn Signal Light P.69
5 Tire P.293
6 Turn Signal Light P.69
7 Front Fog Light P.70
8 Daytime Running Light & Position Light P.68
9 Low Beam Light/High Beam Light P.68
10 Fuel Tank Cap P.184

Type A



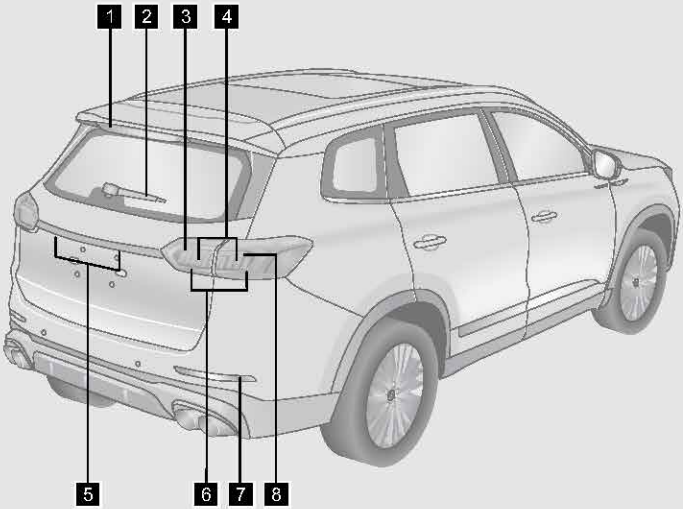
1 High Mounted Stoplight..... P.72
2 Rear Wiper Blade..... P.68
3 Back-up Light..... P.72
4 Brake Light & Position Light..... P.72
5 License Plate Light..... P.72
6 Position Light..... P.68
7 Rear Fog Light..... P.71
8 Turn Signal Light..... P.69

Type B



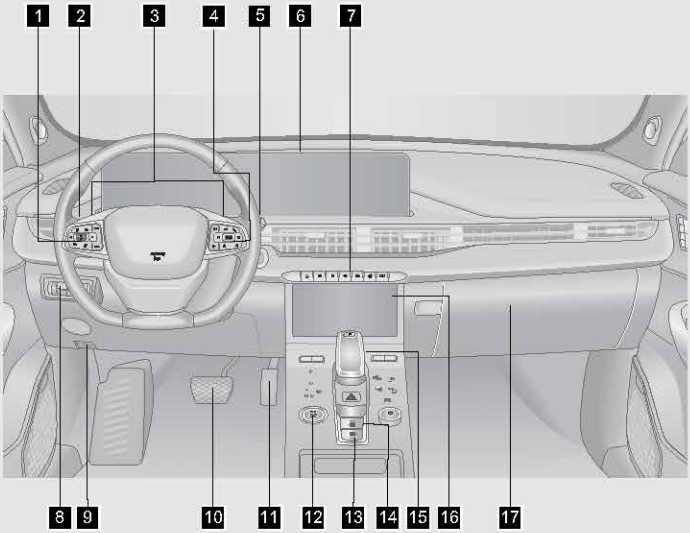
1 Hood P.178
2 Front Wiper Blade P.67
3 Outside Rear View Mirror P.61
4 Side Turn Signal Light P.69
5 Tire P.293
6 Turn Signal Light P.69
7 Front Fog Light P.70
8 Daytime Running Light & Position Light P.68
9 Low Beam Light/High Beam Light P.68
10 Fuel Tank Cap P.184

Type B



1 High Mounted Stoplight..... P.72
2 Rear Wiper Blade..... P.68
3 Back-up Light..... P.72
4 Brake Light & Position Light..... P.72
5 License Plate Light..... P.72
6 Position Light..... P.68
7 Rear Fog Light..... P.71
8 Turn Signal Light..... P.69

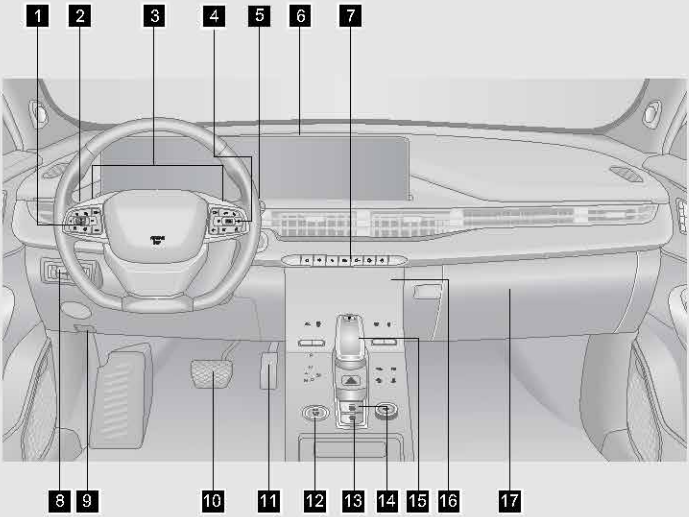
Type A



1 Cruise Button P.227
2 Headlight Combination Switch P.68
3 Paddle Shift P.198
4 Audio Button P.146
5 Wiper Combination Switch P.64
6 Instrument Cluster (Dual Display) P.48
Audio System (Dual Display) P.140
7 Audio Control Panel P.140
8 HDC Switch P.239
Power Back Door Switch P.179
9 Hood Release Lever P.178
10 Brake Pedal
11 Accelerator Pedal
12 ENGINE START STOP Switch P.190
13 Auto Hold Button P.210
14 Electrical Parking Button P.208
15 Shift Lever P.196
16 Air Conditioning System P.154
17 Glove Box P.171

The interior designs are different depending on the configuration of the vehicle. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

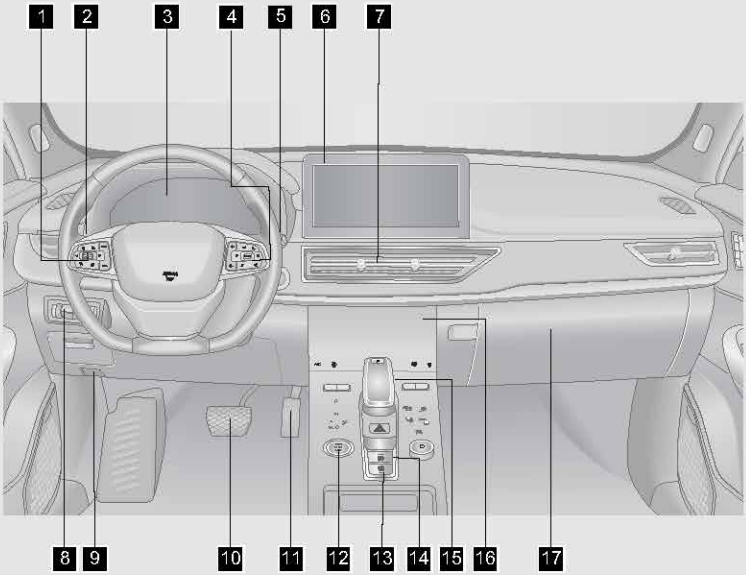
Type B



1 Cruise Button P.227
2 Headlight Combination Switch P.68
3 Paddle Shift P.198
4 Audio Button P.146
5 Wiper Combination Switch P.64
6 Instrument Cluster (Dual Display) P.48
Audio System (Dual Display) P.140
7 Audio Control Panel P.140
8 HDC Switch P.239
Power Back Door Switch P.179
9 Hood Release Lever P.178
10 Brake Pedal
11 Accelerator Pedal
12 ENGINE START STOP Switch P.190
13 Auto Hold Button P.210
14 Electrical Parking Button P.208
15 Shift Lever P.196
16 Air Conditioning System P.154
17 Glove Box P.171

The interior designs are different depending on the configuration of the vehicle. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

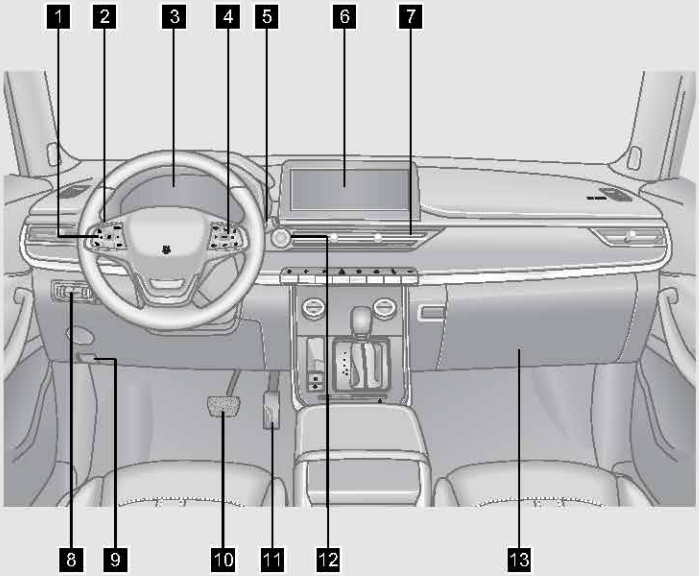
Type C



1 Cruise Button P.227
2 Headlight Combination Switch P.68
3 Instrument Cluster P.25
4 Audio Button P.133
5 Wiper Combination Switch P.64
6 Audio System P.127
7 Center Outlets
8 HDC Switch P.239
Power Back Door Switch P.179
9 Hood Release Lever P.178
10 Brake Pedal
11 Accelerator Pedal
12 ENGINE START STOP Switch P.190
13 Auto Hold Button P.210
14 Electrical Parking Button P.208
15 Shift Lever P.196
16 Air Conditioning System P.154
17 Glove Box P.171

The interior designs are different depending on the configuration of the vehicle. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

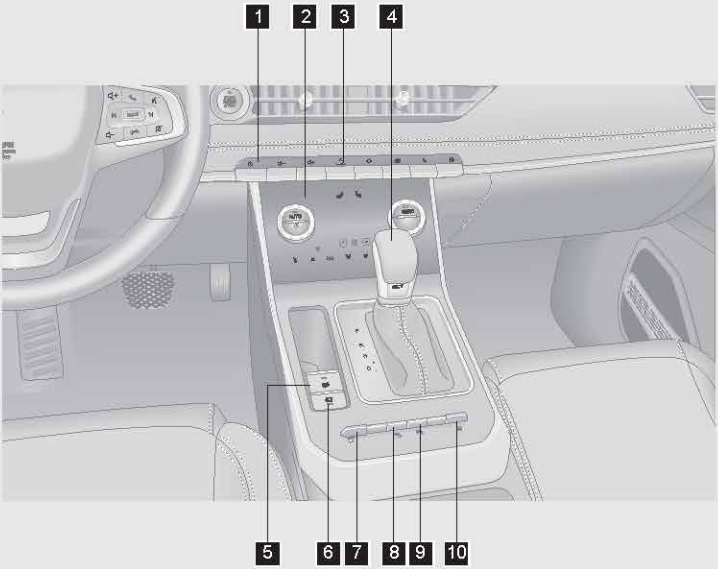
Type D



1 Cruise Button P.227
2 Headlight Combination Switch P.68
3 Instrument Cluster P.25
4 Audio Button P.133
5 Wiper Combination Switch P.64
6 Audio System P.127
7 Center Outlets
8 Light Leveling Switch (If Equipped) P.71
Power Back Door Switch P.179
9 Hood Release Lever P.178
10 Brake Pedal
11 Accelerator Pedal
12 ENGINE START STOP Switch P.190
13 Glove Box P.171

The interior designs are different depending on the configuration of the vehicle. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

Type E



1 Audio Control Panel P.127
2 Air Conditioning System P.154
3 Hazard Light Switch P.269
4 Shift Lever P.196
5 Electrical Parking Button P.208
6 Auto Hold Button P.210
7 Driving Mode Button P.198
8 Panoramic View Monitor Button P.255
9 Parking Radar Button P.257
10 HDC Button P.239

The interior designs are different depending on the configuration of the vehicle. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

1. INTRODUCTION

1-1. How to Read This Manual

How to Read This Manual.... 2
Table of Contents 2
Pictorial Index 2
Index 2

1-2. Symbols in the Manual

Symbols in the Manual 2

1-3. New Vehicle Inspection

User Registration Certificate..... 3
Chery Delivery Card 4

1-4. "Person-to-Person" Consultative Service Card

"Person-to-Person" Consultative Service Card..... 6

1-5. New Vehicle Inspection

New Vehicle Inspection 10
Delivery Inspection Certificate..... 10

1-6. New Vehicle Break-in

New Vehicle Break-in..... 11

1-7. How to Save Fuel and Extend Life of Vehicle

1-8. Precautions Before Driving Vehicle

Safety Check..... 13
Before Starting Engine 13
After Starting Engine..... 14
When Driving..... 14
Parking Operations..... 14
Parking on Slope..... 15
Check the Exhaust System 16

1-9. Off-road Driving Precautions

Off-road Driving..... 17

1-10. Precautions When Driving in the Rain

When Driving on Slippery Road Surfaces..... 18
Driving Through Water 18

1-11. Winter Driving Precautions

Winter Driving Tips 19
Driving on Road Covered with Ice and Snow..... 20
Tire Chains..... 20

1-12. Cybersecurity Notice

Cybersecurity Support Service Update or Termination Notice..... 21
Cybersecurity Notice for Scrapping or Resale 22

2. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

2-1. Instrument Cluster (7-inch)

Instrument Cluster Overview (7-inch)..... 25
Information Display Area (7-inch)..... 27
Setting (7-inch) 29

2-2. Instrument Cluster (12.3-inch)

Instrument Cluster Overview (12.3-inch)..... 39
Information Display Area (12.3-inch) 41
Setting (12.3-inch)..... 42

2-3. Instrument Cluster (Dual Display)

Instrument Cluster View 48

Information Display Area ... 50
Setting 52

2-4. Operation/Malfunction Indicator

Operation/Malfunction Indicator 54

2-5. Steering Wheel

Horn 58
Heated Steering Wheel (If Equipped) 59
Adjusting Steering Wheel 59

2-6. Rear View Mirror

Manual Inside Rear View Mirror 60
Automatic Inside Rear View Mirror (If Equipped) 61
Outside Rear View Mirror 61
Outside Rear View Mirror Memory Function (If Equipped) 63
Automatic Flip-down Function of Outside Rear View Mirror When Reversing (If Equipped) 63

2-7. Wiper System

Wiper Operation 64
Wiper Nozzle Heating Function (If Equipped) 67
Wiper Blade Replacement 67

2-8. Lighting System

Exterior Lighting 68
Interior Lighting 73
Follow Me Home Function 74
Smart Vehicle Locating Function 75
Adaptive Headlight System (AFS) (If Equipped) 76
Intelligent High Beam Assist (IHC) (If Equipped) 76
Light Fogging Instructions 77

2-9. Seats

Correct Sitting Posture 78
Head Restraints 78
Front Seats 79
Second Row Seat 82
Third Row Seat (If Equipped) 84
Seat Heating Function (If Equipped) 85
Seat Ventilation Function (If Equipped) 86
Seat Memory Function (If Equipped) 86
Easy Seat Access Function (If Equipped) 88

2-10. Seat Belts

Seat Belts 89
Seat Belt Pretensioner (If Equipped) 94

2-11. Child Restraint Systems

Child Restraint Systems 95
Recommended Child Restraint Systems 97
TOP TETHER Upper Fixing Point 98
Installing Child Restraint Systems 99
Reminder for Children Staying in Rear Seat (If Equipped) 104

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION

3-1. Key Information

Smart Key 107
Smart Key Battery 109
Effective Range.....111
Keyless Entry..... 113
Vehicle Fortifying..... 114
Immobilizer System 115
Smart Key Vehicle Locating (If Equipped)..... 116
Remote Starting for Smart Key (If Equipped) 116

3-2. Doors

Door Lock Switch 117
Unlocking Doors with Inside Handle 117
Door Mechanical Switch 117
Child-Protection Lock..... 119

3-3. Windows

Power Windows 119
Window Remote Control Function..... 121
Window Jam Protection Function (If Equipped)..... 122

3-4. Panoramic Moon Roof (If Equipped)

Panoramic Moon Roof (-Type A) 124
Panoramic Moon Roof (-Type B) 125
Moon Roof Remote Control Function..... 126
Moon Roof Jam Protection Function..... 127

3-5. Audio System

Audio View..... 127
Audio Operation 130
Audio Setting 131
Audio Button..... 133
Voice Recognition Function (If Equipped) 133
Phone-link..... 134

3-6. Audio System (Dual Display)

Audio View 140
Audio Operation 142
Audio Setting 143
Audio Button..... 146
Voice Recognition Function (If Equipped)..... 147
Phone-link..... 148

3-7. Air Conditioning System

Electric Air Conditioning (If Equipped)..... 154
Automatic A/C (If Equipped) 155
Air Outlets Airflow Control..... 164
Refrigeration Function of Armrest Box on Auxiliary Fascia Console (If Equipped) 165
Automatic Defogging Function (If Equipped)..... 165
Blower Advancing Opening and Blower Delay Closing (If Equipped) 165
Air Conditioning Refrigeration Operation ... 166
Air Conditioning Heating Operation 169

3-8. Wireless Charging

Wireless Charging (If Equipped) 169

3-9. Storage Space

Storage Space 170

3-10. Power Outlet

Power Outlet..... 175
USB Port..... 176

3-11. Sun Visors and Vanity Mirrors

Sun Visors and Vanity Mirrors 177

3-12. Hood

Opening/closing the hood 178

3-13. Back Door

Manual Back Door 178
Power Back Door (If Equipped) 179
Back Door Emergency Opening 184

3-14. Fuel Tank Cap

Fuel Tank Cap 184

4. DRIVING VEHICLE

4-1. Vehicle Power Mode

ENGINE START STOP Switch 190
Electric Steering Column Lock (Vehicle with Manual Transmission) 191

4-2. Starting and Turning off Engine

Normal Starting and Turning off 192
Starting and Turning off in Emergency 193
Adaptive Engine Control System 194
Particulate Filter (GPF) (if Equipped) 195

4-3. Transmission

Automatic Transmission 195

4-4. Intelligent Timely All Wheel Drive System (AWD)

Intelligent Timely All Wheel Drive System (AWD) (If Equipped) 200
Driving Mode 201

4-5. Steering System

Electric Power Steering System (EPS) 207

4-6. Brake System

Electric Parking Brake (EPB) System 208
Automatic Parking System (AUTO HOLD) 210
Vacuum Booster 212
Foot Brake 213

4-7. Airbag (SRS)

Airbag (SRS) 214

5. DRIVING ASSIST

5-1. Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR) System

Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR) System (If Equipped) 225

5-2. Speed Limit Assist System (SLA)

Speed Limit Assist System (SLA) (If Equipped) 225

5-3. Cruise System

Constant Speed Cruise System (CCS) (If Equipped) 227
Adaptive Cruise Control System (ACC) (If Equipped) 229
Active Speed Limit (ASL) (If Equipped) 234

5-4. Idling Stop-start System

Idling Stop-start System (If Equipped)..... 235

5-5. Hill Descent Control (HDC) System

Hill Descent Control (HDC) System (If Equipped) 238

5-6. Lane Assist System

Lane Assist System (If Equipped) 240
Lane Departure Warning System (LDW) (If Equipped)..... 241
Lane Keep Assist System (LKA) (If Equipped) 242

5-7. Blind Spot Detection (BSD) System

Blind Spot Detection (BSD) System (If Equipped) 243
Door Open Warning (DOW) system (If Equipped) 244
Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) System (If Equipped) 245
Rear Collision Warning (RCW) system (If Equipped) 245

5-8. Automatic Emergency Braking System (AEB)/Front Collision Warning System (FCW)

Automatic Emergency Braking System (AEB)/ Front Collision Warning System (FCW) (If Equipped) 245

5-9. Traffic Jam Assist System (TJA)/Integrated Cruise Assist System (ICA)

Traffic Jam Assist System (TJA)/ Integrated Cruise Assist System (ICA) (If Equipped) 248

5-10. Tire Inflation Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Tire Inflation Pressure Monitoring System (-TPMS) (If Equipped) 250

5-11. Parking Assist System

Parking View Monitor System (RVC)..... 252
Panoramic View Monitor (AVM) System (If Equipped) 254
Parking Radar System (If Equipped)..... 257

5-12. Braking Force Control System

Electronic Stability Program (ESP) System ... 262
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 262
Extended Function 264

6. IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

6-1. Basic Knowledge of Vehicle Emergency

Emergency Rescue (If Equipped) 268
Hazard Light..... 269
Reflective Vest..... 269
Warning Triangle..... 270
Spare Tools 270

6-2. Vehicle Emergency Handling

If You Have a Flat Tire During Driving..... 270
If Engine Coolant Temperature is High..... 275
If Battery is Depleted..... 276
If Your Vehicle Cannot Start Normally..... 278

6-3. Towing

Towing Vehicle..... 279
Emergency Towing..... 280
Installing Towing Eyelet... 281

6-4. Fuse

Fuse Box 282
Checking Fuse..... 283
Replacing Fuse..... 283

7. MAINTENANCE

7-1. Repair and Maintenance

Repair and Maintenance..... 286
Chery Authorized Service Station is at Your Service 286
Safety Check..... 287

7-2. Normal Maintenance

Normal Maintenance..... 288
Checking Oil Level..... 289
Checking Transmission Fluid Level..... 290
Checking Brake Fluid Level 290
Checking Coolant Level 291
Checking Radiator and Condenser 292
Checking Drive Belt 292
Checking Tires..... 293
Tire Rotation..... 294
Checking Battery..... 295
Checking Air Conditioning Filter 295
Checking Windshield Washer Fluid 295
Checking Wiper Blades... 296

7-3. Regular Maintenance

First Maintenance Information..... 298
Maintenance Schedule.... 299
Technical Data 305

8. SPECIFICATION

8-1. Label Location

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 308
Vehicle Product Label 309
Engine Number..... 309
Microwave Window..... 309

8-2. Vehicle Specifications

Vehicle Dimensions 310
Vehicle Type..... 311
Vehicle Weight..... 312
Vehicle Performance..... 313
Engine Performance 313
Fuel System 314
Cooling System..... 314
Suspension System..... 315
Steering System..... 315
Brake System 315
Wheel Alignment..... 316
Wheels and Tires 316
Battery..... 317
Light Bulb Specification ... 317
Measurement Range of Vehicle Overall Size except Following Components..... 319

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

INTRODUCTION

1-1. How to Read This Manual

How to Read This Manual 2

Table of Contents 2

Pictorial Index.....2

Index.....2

1-2. Symbols in the Manual

Symbols in the Manual.....2

1-3. New Vehicle Inspection

User Registration Certificate 3

Chery Delivery Card 4

1-4. "Person-to-Person" Consultative Service Card

"Person-to-Person" Consultative Service Card 6

1-5. New Vehicle Inspection

New Vehicle Inspection 10

Delivery Inspection Certificate 10

1-6. New Vehicle Break-in

New Vehicle Break-in..... 11

1-7. How to Save Fuel and Extend Life of Vehicle

1-8. Precautions Before Driving Vehicle

Safety Check..... 13

Before Starting Engine..... 13

After Starting Engine..... 14

When Driving..... 14

Parking Operations..... 14

Parking on Slope..... 15

Check the Exhaust System 16

1-9. Off-road Driving Precautions

Off-road Driving 17

1-10. Precautions When Driving in the Rain

When Driving on Slippery Road Surfaces..... 18

Driving Through Water..... 18

1-11. Winter Driving Precautions

Winter Driving Tips 19

Driving on Road Covered with Ice and Snow..... 20

Tire Chains..... 20

1-12. Cybersecurity Notice

Cybersecurity Support Service Update or Termination Notice 21

Cybersecurity Notice for Scrapping or Resale 22

1-1. How to Read This Manual

How to Read This Manual

There are three methods available for you to find the information you need in this manual. Here is a brief introduction of each method.

Table of Contents

Consult the general Table of Contents to determine which chapter of the Owner's Manual contains the information you need and the Chapter Contents to determine its accurate location.

Pictorial Index

The Pictorial Index is a helpful assistant to find the required information quickly, especially when you are not familiar with the component name.

Index

This is the fastest method for you to find the information you need. The index contains a complete listing of all the important vehicle terminologies.

1-2. Symbols in the Manual

Symbols in the Manual

The following symbols are used in this manual to draw your attention to the information of particular importance. In order to minimize the risks as much as possible, please read the instructions on these symbols carefully before driving, and make sure to follow them.

⚠ WARNING
Indicate a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in damage to your property, personal injury or even death.

⚠ CAUTION
Indicate a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in damage to your vehicle and its equipment, reducing the vehicle's life span.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION
Indicate that the waste must be handled or disposed according to the local environmental protection regulations, otherwise, the environment will be contaminated.

READ
Indicate that the relevant chapter in this manual must be read before any operation.

WARNING and CAUTION relating to personal safety and vehicle safety in this manual are very important. Make sure everyone in the vehicle follows these instructions carefully. So that, not only you can enjoy driving pleasure but also vehicle can be kept in good condition.

1-3. New Vehicle Inspection

Prior to your purchase, Chery authorized service station has inspected your vehicle according to the regulations of Chery Automobile Co., Ltd. The service station will record the delivery date and affix its official seal to the User Registration Certificate. Before you sign the User Registration Certificate, the authorized dealer will provide you with instructions regarding your vehicle's overall performance and some basic knowledge about its features and regular operation according to the Vehicle Delivery Card.

User Registration Certificate

Model Code	
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)	
Engine Number or Transmission Number	
Vehicle Registration Number	
Seal of Dealer:	
Signature of Dealer:	
Delivery Date	
User	
Address	
E-mail	
Telephone	
Have provided and explained the following items for me: • VEHICLE • OWNER'S MANUAL • PRE-DELIVERY INSPECTION	
Signature of User:	
Signature of Dealer:	

Chery Delivery Card

Category	No.	Items	Whether Pass Inspection and Explain Clearly	
Vehicle Performan-ce	1	Engine	YES ☐	NO ☐
	2	Engine oil, brake fluid, power steering fluid (if equipped), coolant, windshield washer fluid	YES ☐	NO ☐
	3	VIN code, engine number and nameplate etc.	YES ☐	NO ☐
	4	Whole set of vehicle keys	YES ☐	NO ☐
	5	All lights of vehicle	YES ☐	NO ☐
	6	Windshield and painted surfaces	YES ☐	NO ☐
	7	Speedometer, tachometer and instrument cluster LCD display	YES ☐	NO ☐
	8	Tires, spare tires, spare tools and Owner's Manual	YES ☐	NO ☐
	9	Seats, seat belts, A/C switches and outlets, glove box and sun visors	YES ☐	NO ☐
	10	Windows, rear view mirrors, windshield wipers, windshield washers, battery, reversing radar system, horns, moon roof (if equipped), audio device and antenna	YES ☐	NO ☐

Category	No.	Items	Whether Pass Inspection and Explain Clearly	
Basic Knowledge About Operation	1*	Unleaded gasoline with an octane number of 91 or higher	YES ☐	NO ☐
		Unleaded gasoline with an octane number of 92 or higher	YES ☐	NO ☐
		Unleaded gasoline with an octane number of 95 or higher	YES ☐	NO ☐
		E22-E100	YES ☐	NO ☐
	2	Normal operation during the break-in period	YES ☐	NO ☐
	3	Operation of all the vehicle lights	YES ☐	NO ☐
	4	Understanding warning lights and indicator lights	YES ☐	NO ☐
	5	Correct time/mileage of the maintenance schedule	YES ☐	NO ☐
	6	Vehicle maintenance in winter/summer	YES ☐	NO ☐
	7	Thorough understanding of the cooling system and normal usage of the coolant	YES ☐	NO ☐
	8	Correct operation of air conditioning	YES ☐	NO ☐
	9	Precautions during starting the vehicle	YES ☐	NO ☐
	10	Correct operation of audio system	YES ☐	NO ☐
	11	Correct usage of moon roof (if equipped)	YES ☐	NO ☐
Signature of Sales Clerk:		Date:		
Signature of User:		Date:		

*: Please use the fuel recommended by Chery authorized dealers.

1-4. "Person-to-Person" Consultative Service Card

"Person-to-Person" Consultative Service Card

Chery authorized service station will provide a dedicated service consultant when you purchase your vehicle. If you have any questions concerning your vehicle, please consult the consultant.

Sheet One (for User)

Name of User:	Date of Purchase:
Dealer of Sales & Service:	Model:
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN):	
The following items should be confirmed by the user:	
1. Vehicle Delivery and Inspection (Mark a " √ " for " Yes " and a " × " for Other Conditions):	
☐	Have introduced the basic operation of the vehicle to the user and performed the delivery inspection.
☐	Have explained the warranty policies to the user.
☐	Have explained the precautions of driving to the user.
☐	Have explained the importance of regular maintenance and the maintenance interval time/mileage to the user.
☐	Have explained the importance of having regular maintenance/vehicle repair performed at Chery authorized service station to the user.
☐	Have delivered the Owner's Manual to the user and reminded him/her to read it.
☐	Have informed the Chery service hotline function and how to use it.
2. "Person-to-Person" Consultative Service Mode Introduction (Mark a " √ " for " Yes " and a " × " for Other Conditions):	
☐	If you have questions and demands, consult a service consultant.
☐	The service consultant is the only person authorized by the dealer to answer the user's questions.
☐	Have assigned a dedicated service consultant to each user for "Person to- Person" service.
☐	If the user is not fully satisfied with the service consultant, the user can select another service consultant.
The following items should be confirmed by the user:	
3. Main Work Introduction on Service Consultant (Mark a " √ " for " Yes " and a " × " for Other Conditions):	

☐	Service reception during service and maintenance.
☐	Regular maintenance reminding.
☐	Answer the service/maintenance consultation.
☐	Service/maintenance reservation acceptance.
☐	Annual inspection reminding/acceptance.
☐	Regular greeting revisit, service activity reminded revisit and important holiday greeting.
☐	Other demands from the user.
4. "Person-to-Person" Consultative Service Relationship Establishment:	
Service consultant business card	
Signature of User/Date:	
Signature of Service Consultant/Date:	

Sheet Two (for Dealer of Sales & Service)

Name of User:	Date of Purchase:
Dealer of Sales & Service:	Model:
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN):	
The following items should be confirmed by the user:	
1. Vehicle Delivery and Inspection (Mark a " √ " for " Yes " and a " × " for Other Conditions):	
☐	Have introduced the basic operation of the vehicle to the user and performed the delivery inspection.
☐	Have explained the warranty policies to the user.
☐	Have explained the precautions of driving to the user.
☐	Have explained the importance of regular maintenance and the maintenance interval time/mileage to the user.
☐	Have explained the importance of having regular maintenance/vehicle repair performed at Chery authorized service station to the user.
☐	Have delivered the Owner's Manual to the user and reminded him/her to read it.
☐	Have informed the Chery service hotline function and how to use it.
2. "Person-to-Person" Consultative Service Mode Introduction (Mark a " √ " for " Yes " and a " × " for Other Conditions):	
☐	If you have questions and demands, consult a service consultant.
☐	The service consultant is the only person authorized by the dealer to answer the user's questions.
☐	Have assigned a dedicated service consultant to each user for "-Personto- Person" service.
☐	If the user is not fully satisfied with the service consultant, the user can select another service consultant.
The following items should be confirmed by the user:	
3. Main Work Introduction on Service Consultant (Mark a " √ " for " Yes " and a " × " for Other Conditions):	
☐	Service reception during service and maintenance.
☐	Regular maintenance reminding.
☐	Answer the service/maintenance consultation.
☐	Service/maintenance reservation acceptance.
☐	Annual inspection reminding/acceptance.

☐	Regular greeting revisit, service activity reminded revisit and important holiday greeting.
☐	Other demands from the user.
4. "Person-to-Person" Consultative Service Relationship Establishment:	
Service consultant business card	
Signature of User/Date:	
Signature of Service Consultant/Date:	

1-5. New Vehicle Inspection

New Vehicle Inspection

The dealer of sales & service has inspected your vehicle according to the regulations of Chery before delivering the vehicle to you. The dealer of sales & service of Chery Auto should fill the delivery date in the inspection certificate and affix the official seal of dealer unit.

Dealer unit will verify the vehicle to you in accordance with "Chery Vehicle Delivery Card", and introduce the knowledge of using the vehicle, which will be signed by salesman and user.

Delivery Inspection Certificate

In witness whereof, this vehicle has passed delivery inspection as regulated by Chery Automobile Co., Ltd. and quality meets technical specification of Chery.

Vehicle Model	
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)	
Engine Number or Transmission Number	
Vehicle Registration Number	
Official Seal of Dealer of Sales & Service:	
Signature of Dealer of Sales & Service:	
Delivery Date	
User	
Address	
E-mail	
Telephone	
Have provided and explained the following items for me: • VEHICLE • OWNER'S MANUAL • PRE-DELIVERY INSPECTION	
Signature of User:	
Signature of Dealer of Sales & Service:	

1-6. New Vehicle Break-in

New Vehicle Break-in

Since the frictional resistance between the moving parts of new vehicle is much larger in the initial use than normal conditions. The break-in effect of initial use will have a great impact on the vehicle's life, operation reliability and economy, so the use of new vehicle must strictly enforce the regulations. The break-in period is 3,000 kilometers in general.

■ Driving regulations of new vehicle break-in period

Within the first 1,000 km:

- Prohibit driving at full speed;
- Driving speed should not be more than 100 km/h;
- Avoid driving at maximum speed in each gear.

Within the first 1,000 - 1,500 km:

- Driving speed can be gradually increased to the highest speed;
- Engine speed can be gradually increased to the maximum allowable speed.

■ Driving recommendations after break-in period

- When driving a vehicle, the maximum speed which engine allows to run in short time is 6,000 r/min. When shifting manually, shift to nearby high gear while the tachometer pointer reaches the red indicator zone.
- Engine speed should not be too low while driving, it is necessary to shift to the appropriate gear. When the engine is cold, do not run the engine at its maximum speed whether in neutral or in other driving gears.

■ Tire and wheel break-in recommendations:

When starting to use new tires, the best adhesion is not available. Therefore, new tires also need break-in, so the vehicle should be driven slowly and especially carefully within the first 100 km of driving.

■ Braking system break-in recommendations:

New brake lining also needs break-in. Because the brakes cannot provide the ideal brake friction during the first 200 km. If the braking efficiency is slightly worse at this stage, increasing depression force on the pedal appropriately. This condition also applies to the each replacement of braking lining later.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION
Avoid running engine at unnecessary high speed. Switching to a high gear in time is helpful to save fuel, reduce operation noise and reduce environmental pollution.

1-7. How to Save Fuel and Extend Life of Vehicle

Saving fuel is largely determined by vehicle conditions and driving habit. Do not overuse the vehicle, which also helps to extend vehicle's life.

The followings are specific tips for fuel saving:

1. Make sure to maintain proper tire inflation pressure. Insufficient tire inflation pressure will lead to tire wear and fuel waste.
2. The vehicle should not be loaded with unnecessary weight. Heavy load increases engine load, resulting in high fuel consumption.
3. Avoid warm-up idling for a long time. The vehicle can be driven once the engine runs smoothly. The warm-up time in cold winter will be longer than other seasons.
4. Accelerate slowly and smoothly. Avoid sudden starting.
5. Avoid engine idling for a long time. If you need to park vehicle and wait for a long time, you should turn off the engine and turn it on again later.
6. Avoid engine out of gear or overspeed. Select proper gears according to driving road conditions.
7. Avoid continuous acceleration and deceleration. Stop-and-go driving will waste the fuel.
8. Avoid unnecessary stopping and braking. You should keep a stable speed. Obey the traffic lights while driving to minimize parking times, or take full advantage of road without traffic lights to drive vehicle. Maintain a proper driving distance with other vehicles to avoid sudden braking. It will also reduce brake wear.
9. Avoid areas with heavy traffic or traffic jams as possible.
10. Do not hold your foot on clutch or brake pedals for a long time. This will cause premature wear, overheating and high fuel consumption.
11. Keep a proper vehicle speed on the highway. The faster vehicle speed, the more fuel consumption. Decreasing vehicle speed will save fuel.
12. Keep proper front wheel alignment. Avoid collision with road curbs and reduce your vehicle speed when driving on rough road surfaces. Improper front wheel alignment will not only quicken tire wear, but also increase engine load.
13. Avoid contacting vehicle chassis with mud, etc.
14. Adjust vehicle and keep it in optimal working condition. Dirty air filter, improper valve clearance, dirty spark plugs, dirty oil and grease, brakes without proper adjustment, etc. can reduce engine performance and waste fuel. You must perform maintenance periodically if you want to extend your vehicle's life and reduce your driving costs. Your vehicle needs to be serviced more frequently if you always driving under severe conditions.

⚠ CAUTION

Never turn off engine when driving downhill. The power steering system and brake system will not operate normally when engine is not running.

1-8. Precautions Before Driving Vehicle

Safety Check

It is better to do a safety check before driving vehicle. A few minutes of checking can help ensure safe and pleasant driving.

⚠ WARNING

If you perform this check in an enclosed garage, make sure there is adequate ventilation.

Before Starting Engine

■ Outside vehicle

1. Tires (including spare tire): Check tire pressure with a tire pressure gauge and carefully check tires for cuts, damage or excessive wear.
2. Wheel bolts: Make sure no wheel bolts are missing or loose.
3. Fluid leaks: After the vehicle has been parked for a while, check underneath for leaking fuel, oil, coolant or other fluids (Water dripping from air conditioning after use is normal).
4. Lights: Make sure the headlights, daytime running lights, brake lights, fog lights, turn signal lights and other lights are working properly.
5. Intake grilles: Remove snow, leaves or other obstructions from the intake grilles in front of windshield.

■ Inside vehicle

1. Spare tools: Make sure you have spare tools, such as jack, wheel bolt wrench and spare tire.
2. Seat belts: Check if the buckles can be locked securely. Make sure belts are not worn or frayed.
3. Instrument cluster and controls: Especially make sure the malfunction indicator lights, indicator lights, and controls are working properly.
4. Brakes: Make sure the pedal has enough clearance.

■ Engine compartment and engine

1. Spare fuses: Make sure spare fuses are available. All the fuses with amperage ratings designated on the fuse box cover should be provided.
2. Coolant level: Make sure coolant level is proper.

3. Battery and cables: Check for corroded or loose terminals and a cracked case. Check the cables for good condition and connections.
4. Wiring: Check for damaged, loose or broken wires.
5. Fuel lines: Check the lines for leaks or loose connections.

■ Hood

Make sure the hood is locked completely before driving. Otherwise, the hood may tilt up and block front view when vehicle is moving, which could lead to an accident.

After Starting Engine

1. Exhaust system: Listen for any leakage. Repair any leaks immediately if such condition occurs.
2. Engine oil level: Stop vehicle on level ground, turn off engine and wait for 5 minutes, pull out the dipstick to check if the engine oil level is proper.

When Driving

1. Gauges and meters: Make sure each the indication of gauges and meters are working properly.
2. Brakes: At a safe place, check that the vehicle is not be pulled to one side when the brakes are applied.
3. Other abnormal conditions: Check for loose parts and leaks. Listen for abnormal noises.

Parking Operations

Proper parking is an important part of safety driving, park the vehicle in a place with wide road, good view without affecting traffic. Parking operation steps are as follows:

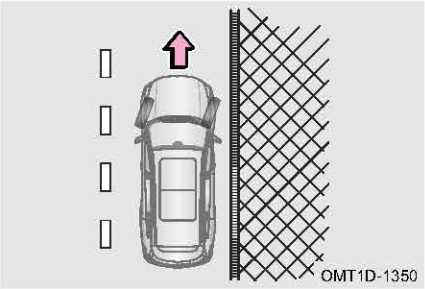
1. Depress clutch (vehicle with manual transmission) and brake pedal until the vehicle is completely stopped.
2. Confirm that the electronic parking is enabled.
3. For vehicle with automatic transmission: Move shift lever to "P" position. For vehicle with manual transmission: Move shift lever to neutral position.
4. Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF mode.

⚠ CAUTION
When you leave vehicle, make sure to lock your vehicle and carry the vehicle's key with you.

Parking on Slope

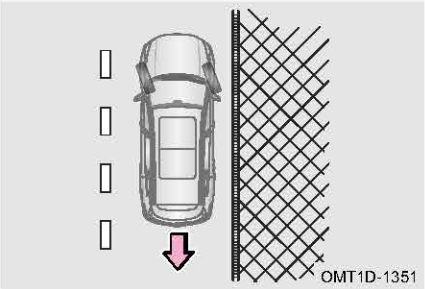
Parking vehicle on a slope is mainly by brake force of park brake. Failure to apply park brake or park brake malfunction may cause the vehicle to slide downwards along slope and personal injury or damage to vehicle. When parking on a slope, it is better to face tires toward one side of vehicle, to prevent vehicle from moving accidentally.

■ Parking on downhill with curb



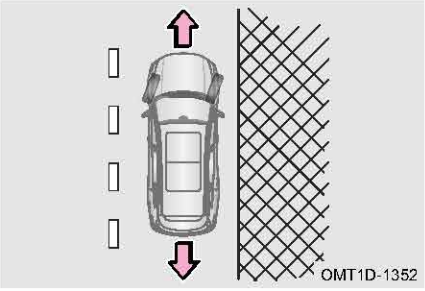
If there is curb on roadside, turn steering wheel to right by a certain angle to make front part of front right wheel close to or against the curb, to prevent vehicle from sliding forward along the slope, then apply the park brake.

■ Parking on uphill with curb



If there is curb on roadside, turn steering wheel to left by a certain angle to make rear part of front right wheel close to or against the curb, to prevent vehicle from sliding backward along the slope, then apply the park brake.

■ Parking on uphill or downhill (without curb)



If there is no curb on roadside, turn steering wheel right by a large angle, to prevent vehicle from driving into center of road after sliding forward/backward along the slope. Turn steering wheel to side of road so that vehicle is far away from center of road when moving, then apply the park brake.

■ Carrying passengers

Before driving, make sure all passengers sit in their seats with their seat belts properly fastened. Do not let the passengers sit in the places where there are no seats and seat belts, as they are likely to be seriously injured during a collision.

■ Locking the vehicle

- When leaving the vehicle unattended, carry smart key with you and lock all the doors, even if parking the vehicle in the garage or on the sidewalk in front of your house.
- Park the vehicle in bright and spacious places as much as possible, and do not expose valuable items.

■ Exhaust gas

- Avoid inhaling the engine exhaust gas. It contains carbon monoxide (CO), which is a harmful, colorless and odorless gas. It can cause unconsciousness or even death after inhaling.
- Make sure the exhaust system has no leakage holes or loose connections. The exhaust system should be checked usually. If a change in exhaust gas sound is found, please have the system checked immediately.
- Do not run the engine in a garage or an enclosed area except for the time needed to drive the vehicle in or out. The exhaust gas cannot escape, which may cause serious injury.
- Do not stay in a parked vehicle for a long time with the engine running. If it is unavoidable, vehicle should be parked in a spacious area and adjust heating and cooling system to forcibly introduce outside air into vehicle.
- Keep the back door closed while driving. An open or unclosed back door may cause exhaust gas to enter the vehicle.
- To achieve proper operation of vehicle ventilation system, keep intake grilles free of snow, leaves, or other obstructions.
- If you smell exhaust fumes in vehicle, open windows to allow fresh air to enter and check vehicle condition.

Check the Exhaust System

The exhaust system should be checked in the following situations:

1. When you smell the exhaust fumes;
2. When you notice a change in the sound of exhaust system;
3. When exhaust system is damaged due to vehicle collision;
4. When the vehicle is lifted for inspection and repair.

1-9. Off-road Driving Precautions

Off-road Driving

Always observe the following precautions to minimize the risk of serious personal injury or damage to your vehicle:

- Be careful when driving off the road. Do not drive in dangerous areas.
- Place both hands on the outer ring of the steering wheel when driving off the road.
- Always check your brakes for effectiveness immediately after driving on the road covered with sand, mud, shallow water or snow.
- The driver and all passengers should fasten their seat belts whenever vehicle is moving.

⚠ WARNING

- After driving on road surfaces covered with tall grass, mud, gravel, sand, rivers, etc., check if there is grass, bush, paper, rags, stone, sand, etc. adhering to or trapped on underbody. Clear off any above materials from the underbody. If driving vehicle with those matters trapped on or adhering to the underbody, a breakdown or fire could occur.
- When driving off road or on rugged terrain, high speed driving, jumping, sharp turning and striking objects, etc. are forbidden. Failure to do so may cause loss of control or vehicle rollover, resulting in death or severe personnel injury. You are also risking expensive damage to your vehicle's suspension and chassis.

1-10. Precautions When Driving in the Rain

When Driving on Slippery Road Surfaces

Drive carefully when it is raining, because visibility will be reduced, windows may become fogged-up and road will be slippery.

- Do not drive at high speed when driving on an expressway in rain, because there may be a layer of water between tires and road surface, preventing steering system and brakes from operating properly.

⚠ CAUTION

- Sudden braking, acceleration and steering on slippery road surfaces may cause tire slippage and reduce your ability to control vehicle, resulting in an accident.
- Sudden changes in engine speed, such as sudden engine braking may cause vehicle to skid, resulting in an accident.
- After driving through a puddle, lightly depress brake pedal to make sure brakes are functioning properly. Wet brake lining may prevent brakes from functioning properly. If brake lining on one side is wet and not functioning properly, steering control may be affected, resulting in an accident.

Driving Through Water

The vehicle could be seriously damaged when driving on a road that has flooded after heavy rain. If driving through water is unavoidable, check the depth of the water and drive slowly and carefully.

1. When you are driving through water, make sure that the engine runs properly and that the steering and braking system works normally. When driving smoothly through water, you should switch to low gear and avoid a sudden depression of the accelerator pedal or a rush driving. Doing so may prevent water from splashing into the engine.
2. Depress and hold accelerator pedal while driving, make sure vehicle has adequate and stable power. You should drive through without half-way stopping, gear shifting or sharp turning.
3. If vehicle stalls in water, never restart it immediately to prevent further damage to engine. The vehicle should be towed to a safe place where the water is shallow to find out the cause.

⚠ CAUTION

- Never drive through water that is deeper than wheel rim.
- Water intrusion into engine can cause it to stall, or cause serious internal damage.
- Water can wash the grease from the wheel bearing, causing rusting and premature abrasion.
- Driving through water may cause damage to your vehicle drive train components. Always visually inspect your vehicle's fluids (e.g. engine oil, transmission fluid, etc.) for signs of leakage after driving through water. Do not continue to operate vehicle if any fluid leaks, as this may result in further damage.
- Vehicle traction and braking performance will decrease while driving through water. The braking distance will increase. Sand and mud that have accumulated around the brake discs may affect the braking efficiency and may damage the brake system components. After driving through water, slightly depress the brake pedal for several times to dry the brakes off.

1-11. Winter Driving Precautions

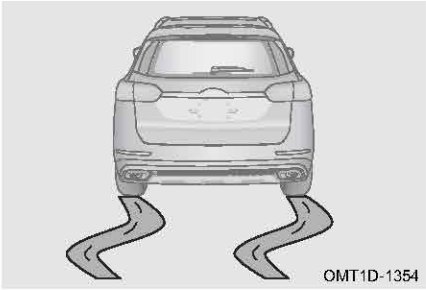
Winter Driving Tips

- Coolant: Make sure that coolant has anti-freezing function. Only use coolant recommended by Chery. More details about coolant type selection.
- Battery and cables: Low temperature will decrease power of battery. Sufficient power should be stored in battery for starting in winter.
- Oil: In winter, it is recommended to choose appropriate engine oil according to the local temperature condition. The lower viscosity at low temperature, the better fluidity at low temperature, indicating that the lower the ambient temperature at which the oil can be used. More details about oil type selection.
- Door locks: Avoid door locks being frozen. Deicing agent or glycerin should be sprayed into door lock holes.
- Washer fluid: Use washer fluid containing antifreeze. This product is available at Chery authorized service station and most vehicle component distributors.
- Mudguards: Avoid ice and snow accumulation under mudguards. Failure to do so may cause difficult steering. When driving in cold weather, you should often stop vehicle to check for ice and snow accumulation under mudguards. It is recommended that you should take some necessary emergency items with you depending on different driving destinations. Items that need to be put in vehicle: Tire chains, window snow scraper, sand or salt bag, signal flasher, shovel, jumper cable, etc.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not use water as a substitute for coolant.
- Do not use engine coolant or other alternative washer fluid, otherwise vehicle paint will be damaged.

Driving on Road Covered with Ice and Snow



Rapid acceleration on slippery road surfaces, such as snow or ice covered roads, may cause the rear wheels slipping to right or left. Therefore, please drive at low speed and operate carefully.

It is possible to build up a layer of water film between the tire and road surface when driving on wet or slushy roads. This may prevent the steering and braking from operating properly. To reduce the torque and avoid slipping, you can use 2nd gear (vehicle with manual transmission) when starting off vehicle on ice or snow covered road surfaces. It is recommended that you enable ESP function on this occasion.

■ Driving out silt and ice and snow road

If drive wheel is stuck in silt or ice and snow, please attempt to shake vehicle at low speed and drive forward and backward repeatedly. Shift the shift lever between forward position and reverse position several times and depress accelerator pedal slightly. Avoid shifting the shift lever between forward position and reverse position for a long period of time, failure to do so may cause excessive transmission wear.

Tire Chains

Purchase a set of tire chains that match size of the vehicle tires. Pay attention to the following precautions when installing and removing chains:

1. Follow local regulations when using chains;
2. Install and remove tire chains in a safe location;
3. Install tire chains by following the instructions provided with the tire chains;
4. Chains can only be installed on drive wheels;
5. It is recommended to use the beef tendon chains or rubber chains with a thickness not exceeding 12 mm, otherwise, tires, rims, drive system, brake system and wheel guard plates may be damaged, vehicle damages resulting from improper use of chains are not covered by warranty;

6. Please consult Chery authorized service station for details about wheels, tire size.

⚠ CAUTION

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents. Failure to do so may result in the vehicle unable to be driven safely, and may cause death or serious injury.

- Regulations regarding the use of tire chains vary depending on location and type of road. Always check local regulations before installing tire chains;
- Be sure to use chains that are suitable for your vehicle. Installing chain will affect vehicle handling, please drive carefully. Using improper chains or improper installing of chains may cause an accident and lead to injuries;
- Please follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the chains to install and remove chains, park the vehicle in a safe place before installation and removal. Be sure to turn off the engine before installing chains (automatic transmission is in P position), place the traffic warning signs if necessary;
- Do not drive vehicle at more than 30 km/h when chains are installed on vehicle, or refer to the vehicle speed limit specified by the manufacturer of chains, whichever is lower. It should avoid dangerous road conditions such as bumps, potholes, sharp turns etc. when installing chains, do not turn steering wheel sharply, lock brake urgently, accelerate and decelerate suddenly etc.

1-12. Cybersecurity Notice

Cybersecurity Support Service Update or Termination Notice

The company has provided cybersecuritysupport services in the corresponding software and equipment of the Internet of Vehicles service, and regularly or irregularly updates or terminates this service.

We can notify customers through website announcements, emails, in-vehicle systems, mobile phone text messages, voice calls, etc. according to the specific content of the notification.

Email, SMS, and voice calls will be sent to the email address and mobile phone listed in the customer's account registration information.

Cybersecurity Notice for Scrapping or Resale

Before you resell or scrap the vehicle, that is, when you no longer hold the vehicle, you should clear the personal information in the vehicle terminal by yourself.

The company does not assume any responsibility if the personal information of the vehicle terminal is leaked to a third party due to improper operation.

Our franchised dealers are familiar with the relevant regulations and can provide you with consulting services.

2-1. Instrument Cluster (7-inch)

Instrument Cluster Overview (7-inch) 25

Information Display Area (7-inch) 27

Setting (7-inch) 29

2-2. Instrument Cluster (12.3-inch)

Instrument Cluster Overview (12.3-inch) 39

Information Display Area (12.3-inch) 41

Setting (12.3-inch) 42

2-3. Instrument Cluster (Dual Display)

Instrument Cluster View 48

Information Display Area 50

Setting 52

2-4. Operation/Malfunction Indicator

Operation/Malfunction Indicator 54

2-5. Steering Wheel

Horn 58

Heated Steering Wheel (If Equipped) 59

Adjusting Steering Wheel 59

2-6. Rear View Mirror

Manual Inside Rear View Mirror 60

Automatic Inside Rear View Mirror (If Equipped) 61

Outside Rear View Mirror 61

Outside Rear View Mirror Memory Function (If Equipped) 63

Automatic Flip-down Function of Outside Rear View Mirror When Reversing (If Equipped) 63

2-7. Wiper System

Wiper Operation 64

Wiper Nozzle Heating Function (If Equipped) 67

Wiper Blade Replacement 67

2-8. Lighting System

Exterior Lighting 68

Interior Lighting 73

Follow Me Home Function 74

Smart Vehicle Locating Function 75

Adaptive Headlight System (AFS) (If Equipped) 76

Intelligent High Beam Assist (IHC) (If Equipped) 76

Light Fogging Instructions ... 77

2-9. Seats

Correct Sitting Posture 78

Head Restraints 78

Front Seats 79

Second Row Seat 82

Third Row Seat (If Equipped) 84

Seat Heating Function (If Equipped) 85

Seat Ventilation Function (If Equipped)..... 86

Seat Memory Function (If Equipped)..... 86

Easy Seat Access Function (If Equipped)..... 88

2-10. Seat Belts

Seat Belts 89

Seat Belt Pretensioner (If Equipped)..... 94

2-11. Child Restraint Systems

Child Restraint Systems..... 95

Recommended Child Restraint Systems..... 97

TOP TETHER Upper Fixing Point..... 98

Installing Child Restraint Systems 99

Reminder for Children Staying in Rear Seat (If Equipped) 104

2-1. Instrument Cluster (7-inch)

Instrument Cluster Overview (7-inch)

1 Engine coolant temperature gauge: Current engine coolant temperature.

Low temperature range: Near C or in C area

When engine coolant temperature gauge is near C or in C area, it indicates that engine coolant temperature is low, do not run engine at high speed and the engine load should not be excessive within this temperature range.

Overheating range: Near H or in H area

When engine coolant temperature gauge is near H or in H area, it indicates that engine coolant temperature is high. Stop vehicle in a safe place away from traffic, turn vehicle power to OFF mode after idling for several minutes. Please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

⚠ CAUTION

- If engine coolant temperature gauge indication remains in low temperature range for a long time, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
- Never open the coolant reservoir cap if engine coolant temperature gauge indication is in overheating range. Check if coolant level is too low after engine cools down. Never run engine when coolant level is too low, or the engine will be seriously damaged.

2 Speedometer: Current driving speed (unit: km/h).

⚠ CAUTION
Speedometer is affected by tire size used in vehicle. Only tires of original size can be used (for details, refer to "Vehicle Specifications"), otherwise the speedometer will not indicate the correct speed.

3 Tachometer: Current engine speed (unit: x1,000 rpm).

After break-in period of vehicle, it is allowed to reach the high engine speed range of 6,000 - 8,000 rpm. Do not drive vehicle within this range for a long time.

⚠ CAUTION
• Do not run engine at high speed during break-in period. • Do not keep engine speed at 6,000 rpm or more for a long time, or engine may be seriously damaged.

4 Fuel gauge: Current remaining fuel in fuel tank.

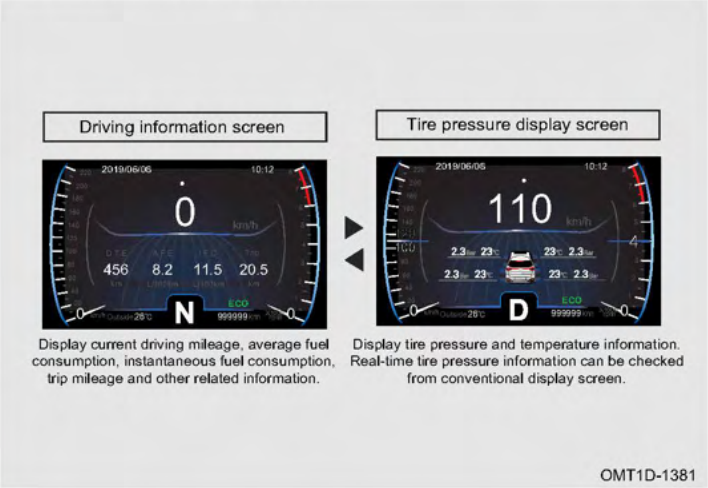
When fuel gauge indication is near E or the low fuel level warning indicator remains on, it indicates that remaining fuel is insufficient. Please add fuel as soon as possible.

READ
When the vehicle is accelerating, sudden braking, sharp turning or driving on a sloping road, the fuel gauge reading might be inaccurate.

Information Display Area (7-inch)

Conventional display screen

Conventional display screen includes the following screens, cycle the following screens by turn-left button " ◀ " / turn-right button " ▶ " of the steering wheel combination buttons.

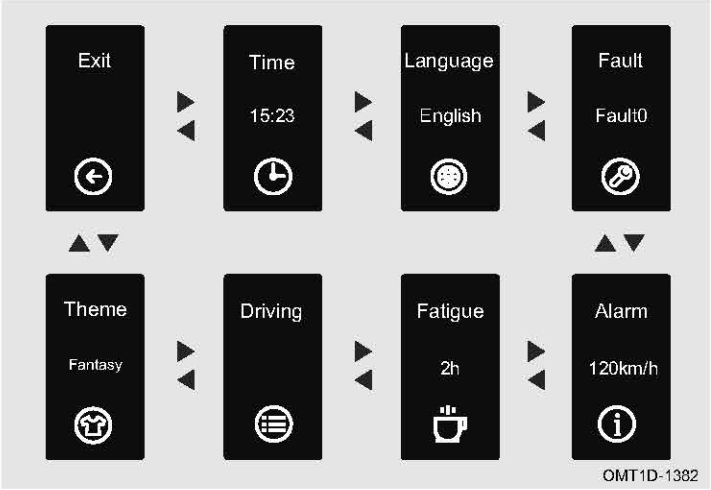


READ

The instrument cluster displays " " icon during a Bluetooth call.

Setting screen

The setting screen includes the following screens. Short press the enter button " " on the steering wheel combination buttons to enter the setting screen. Switch to the setting menu by pressing turn-left button " ◀ " / turn-right button " ▶ " of the steering wheel combination buttons, and short press enter button " " again to enter the setting.



READ
Information screens are for reference only. Please subject to the actual vehicle.

Setting (7-inch)

Time setting

OMT1D-1383

Step 1: On the setting screen, press turn-left button " ◀ " /turn-right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to switch to the time setting, short press enter button " ⧉ " to enter the time setting screen;

Short press turn-left button " ◀ "/turn-right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to adjust the year, month, day and time, short press enter button " ⧉ " to save and exit setting.

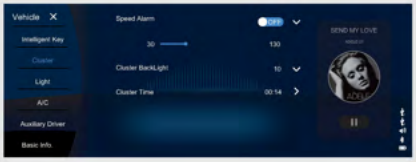
READ

The meter buzzer will not sound in all alarm conditions.

Overspeed alarm (if equipped)

OMT18-2390

When vehicle speed reaches the set value, driving information display screen will display the overspeed indication value " (120) " and alarm buzzer will sound (specific set speed value will be displayed in the icon). Warning icon will go off only when vehicle speed is lower than the set value by 5 km/h. If vehicle speed reaches the set value again, alarm will be triggered again.



OMT1D-1384

Step 1: Click "Vehicle settings";

Step 2: Click "Cluster" and select "-Speed Alarm" to set speed limit value or turn off overspeed alarm function.

READ
• The speed limit is adjusted by 5 km/h every time. • The speed limit can be set circularly between 30 km/h to 130 km/h and OFF.

Non-adjustable overspeed alarm (if equipped)

When the speed reaches the 120 km/h, instrument cluster pops the alarm screen and alarm buzzer sounds. Warning text and sounds will disappear only when the speed is lower than 115 km/h. If the speed reaches 120 km/h again, it will alarm again.

Fatigue driving

OMT18-2410

When driving time exceeds the set time, "Driving Time Over–h, Please Take A Rest" will be displayed on information display area, at the same time, alarm sounds for 1 s and fatigue driving icon displays "☕" to inform the driver to take a rest.

READ
The meter buzzer will not sound in all alarm conditions.

OMT1D-1385

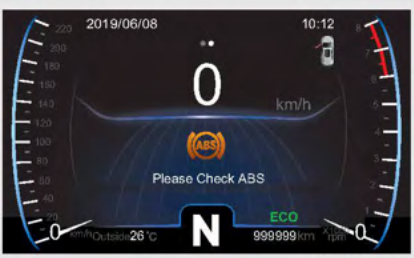
Step 1: On the setting screen, press turn-left button " ◀ " /turn-right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to switch to the fatigue driving, short press enter button " ⧉ " to enter the fatigue driving setting;

Step 2: Short press turn-left button " ◀ "/turn-right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to increase/decrease by 0.5 h on initial data. Short press enter button " ⧉ " to save and exit setting.

READ

The fatigue driving time value can be set circularly between 1 h to 4 h and OFF. System defaults to 1 h for fatigue driving reminder opening time.

Malfunction inquiry



OMT18-2370

When there are fault and abnormal information in the system detected by vehicle on-board computer, after engine start stop switch is turned on, information display area immediately displays the alarm information one by one and records it on the fault information screen (for example, please check the ABS system).

OMT1D-1386

On the setting screen, press turn-left button " ◀ " / turn-right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to switch to the fault inquiry, short press enter button " ⧉ " to enter the fault inquiry screen;

Step 2: If there is multiple abnormal information in the system, the information will be displayed in the central area of information display area. Operate turn-left button " ◀ "/turn-right button " ▶ " of the steering wheel combination buttons to check the different abnormal information.

⚠ CAUTION

If an abnormal alarm prompt occurs, please check the vehicle according to the prompt information. If the fault cannot be eliminated, please turn off the engine, and contact the Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

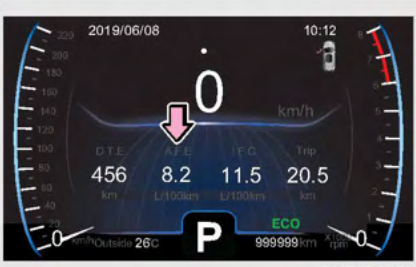
Theme setting

OMT1D-1387

Step 1: On the setting screen, press turn-left button " ◀ "/turn-right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to switch to the Theme setting, short press enter button " ⧉ " to enter the Theme setting;

Step 2: Short press turn-left button " ◀ "/turn-right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to switch the theme. short press enter button " ⧉ " of steering wheel combination buttons to exit setting.

Average fuel consumption



OMT18-2450

Display average fuel consumption of the vehicle.

Display average fuel consumption after engine starts. Before that, meter displays current value. Displayed data will be updated approximately every 10 s.

READ

Average fuel consumption is calculated by the on-board computer, it can only be used as a reference.

OMT1D-1388

Step 1: Select driving information, short press enter button " ⧉ " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter setting;

Step 2: Short press turn-left button " ◀ "/turn-right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter the average fuel consumption reset screen;

Step 3: On the average fuel consumption reset screen, long press enter button " ⧉ " of steering wheel combination buttons to reset.

READ

Average fuel consumption is calculated by the on-board computer, it can only be used as a reference.

Trip mileage

OMT18-2480

Display the trip mileage of this vehicle.

It can be used to calculate distance between two locations after trip mileage is reset.

Trip mileage display range is 0 ~ 9999.9 km. When it exceeds 9999.9 km, it will be reset and recalculated.

OMT1D-1389

Step 1: Select driving information, short press enter button " ⧉ " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter setting;

Step 2: Short press turn-left button " ◀ "/turn-right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter the trip mileage reset screen;

Step 3: On the trip mileage reset screen, long press enter button " ⧉ " of steering wheel combination buttons to reset.

ESP function

OMT1D-1390

Step 1: Select driving information, short press enter button " ⧉ " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter setting;

Step 2: Short press turn-left button " ◀ "/turn-right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter ESP function screen;

Step 3: On the ESP function screen, long press enter button " ⧉ " of steering wheel combination buttons for 5 s to switch between ON/OFF.

READ

- Electronic Stability Control System (ESP) cannot be turned off during operation.
- When driving vehicle for the first time, Electronic Stability Control System (ESP) is on by default.

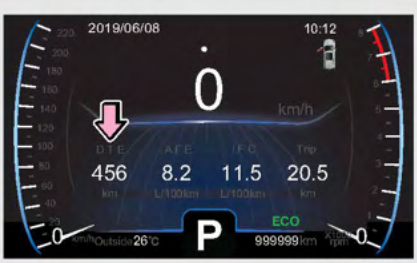
Total mileage

OMT18-2430

Display total mileage of the vehicle.

The displayed range of the total mileage is 0 ~ 999,999 km, it will always display 999,999 km if beyonds the range.

Driving mileage



OMT18-2440

Display driving mileage of the vehicle.

The estimated maximum distance that can be driven with current remaining fuel. If only a small amount of fuel is added to the fuel tank, the display may not be updated.

READ

Driving mileage is calculated by the on-board computer, it can only be used as a reference.

Instantaneous fuel consumption

OMT18-2470

Display the instantaneous fuel consumption of this vehicle.

After starting the engine and accelerating, the instantaneous fuel consumption of engine is extremely high. It is normal.

> **READ**
>
> Instantaneous fuel consumption value is calculated by the on-board computer, it can only be used as a reference.

Maintenance reminder

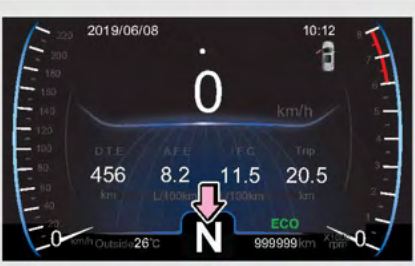
OMT1D-1391

It prompts that vehicle needs to be maintained.

When maintenance is not reset, it compares maintenance mileage with the first maintenance mileage. When it reaches the first maintenance mileage, maintenance indicator on information display area comes on.

After resetting the maintenance mileage, it compares maintenance mileage with maintenance intervals. When it reaches maintenance interval, maintenance indicator on information display area comes on.

Gear range display



OMT18-2520

Display the currently selected gear range information (display the current gear range in manual mode).

Door status display

OMT18-2530

Indicate opening/closing condition of door in any side.

When speed is less than 3 km/h with a door open, the buzzer will not sound but the corresponding door symbol will turn on; When speed is 3 km/h or higher, the buzzer will sound and the corresponding door symbol will flash continuously to inform driver to close it.

⚠ WARNING
Do not drive the vehicle with any door open or not fully closed to prevent the passenger from being thrown out due to sudden open of door, resulting in serious injury or death.

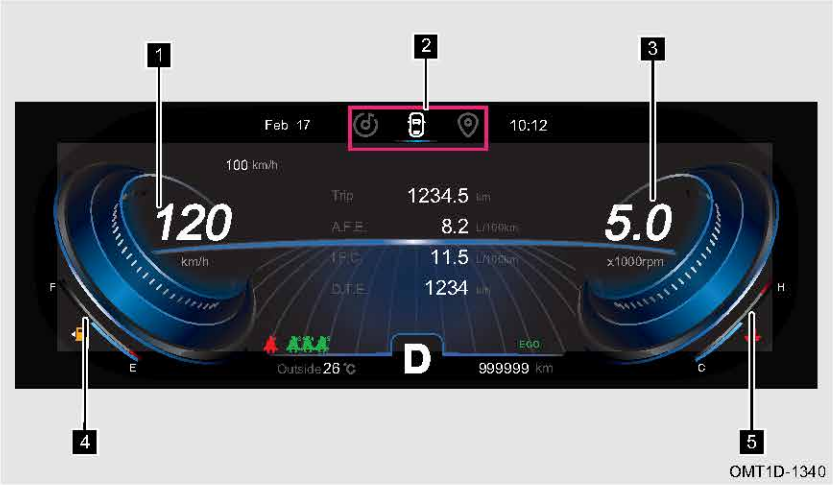
Reversing radar information

OMT18-2550

When the engine is started and shift the shift lever to R, reversing radar information will be displayed on the information display area.

2-2. Instrument Cluster (12.3-inch)

Instrument Cluster Overview (12.3-inch)



1 Speedometer: Current driving speed (unit: km/h).

> ⚠ CAUTION
>
> Speedometer is affected by tire size used in vehicle. Only tires of original size can be used (for details, refer to "Vehicle Specifications"), otherwise the speedometer will not indicate the correct speed.

2 Conventional display screen (status bar): Current conventional display screen information.

3 Tachometer: Current engine speed (unit: x1,000 rpm).

After break-in period of vehicle, it is allowed to reach the high engine speed range of 6,000 - 8,000 rpm. Do not drive vehicle within this range for a long time.

> ⚠ CAUTION
>
> - Do not run engine at high speed during break-in period.
> - Do not keep engine speed at 6,000 rpm or more for a long time, or engine may be seriously damaged.

4 Fuel gauge: Current remaining fuel in fuel tank.

When fuel gauge indication is near E or the low fuel level warning indicator remains on, it indicates that remaining fuel is insufficient. Please add fuel as soon as possible.

READ
When the vehicle is accelerating, sudden braking, sharp turning or driving on a sloping road, the fuel gauge reading might be inaccurate.

5 Engine coolant temperature gauge: Current engine coolant temperature.

Low temperature range: Near C or in C area

When engine coolant temperature gauge is near C or in C area, it indicates that engine coolant temperature is low, do not run engine at high speed and the engine load should not be excessive within this temperature range.

Overheating range: Near H or in H area

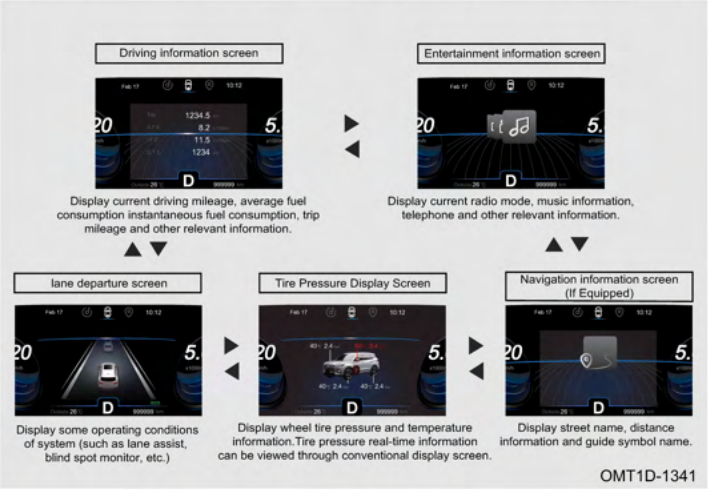
When engine coolant temperature gauge is near H or in H area, it indicates that engine coolant temperature is high. Stop vehicle in a safe place away from traffic, turn vehicle power to OFF mode after idling for several minutes. Please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

CAUTION
• If engine coolant temperature gauge indication remains in low temperature range for a long time, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately. • Never open the coolant reservoir cap if engine coolant temperature gauge indication is in overheating range. Check if coolant level is too low after engine cools down. Never run engine when coolant level is too low, or the engine will be seriously damaged.

Information Display Area (12.3-inch)

Conventional display screen

Conventional display screen includes the following screens, press steering wheel combination button " ◀ " / " ▶ " briefly to cycle the following screens.



Setting screen

Setting screen includes following screens, on conventional display screen, dial/short press " OK " button of steering wheel combination buttons to enter setting screen. Press " ◀ "/" ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to cycle the following screens. Dial down/short press " OK " of steering wheel combination buttons again to enter the setting.

Setting (12.3-inch)

Time setting

OMT1D-1343

Step 1: On setting screen, press " ◀ "/" ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to switch to time setting. Dial down/short press " OK " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter time setting screen;

Step 2: Short press " ◀ "/" ▶ of steering wheel combination buttons to adjust date and time. Short press " OK " of steering wheel combination buttons to save and return to setting screen.

Language setting

OMT1D-1344

Step 1: On setting screen, press " ◀ "/" ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to switch to language setting. Dial down/short press " OK " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter language setting screen;

Step 2: Short press " ◀ "/" ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to switch languages between Portuguese and English. Short press " OK " of steering wheel combination buttons to save and return to setting screen.

Overspeed alarm (if equipped)

When speed reaches the set value, alarm icon " 120 " will be displayed on driving information display screen (specific set speed value will be displayed in the icon) and alarm buzzer sounds, the speed value turns red at the same time. Alarm icon and sounds will disappear only when speed is lower than setting value by 5 km/h. If speed reaches the set value again, it will alarm again.

READ

The meter buzzer will sound in some alarm conditions.

OMT1D-1345

Step 1: On setting screen, press " ◀ "/" ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to switch to driving information. Dial down/short press " OK " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter driving information setting screen;

Step 2: Short press " ◀ "/" ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to select overspeed alarm screen. Dial down " OK " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter overspeed alarm screen;

Step 3: Short press " ◀ "/" ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to decrease/increase by 5 km/h on initial data. Short press " OK " of steering wheel combination buttons to save and return to setting screen;

Step 4: Dial down " OK " of steering wheel combination buttons to turn off overspeed alarm. After that, dial up " OK " of steering wheel combination buttons to turn on overspeed alarm and set the speed limit value.

READ

- The speed limit is adjusted by 5 km/h every time.
- The speed limit can be set circularly between 30 km/h to 130 km/h and OFF.

Non-adjustable overspeed alarm (if equipped)

When the speed reaches the 120 km/h, instrument cluster pops the alarm screen and alarm buzzer sounds. Warning text and sounds will disappear only when the speed is lower than 115 km/h. If the speed reaches 120 km/h again, it will alarm again.

Fatigue driving

When driving time exceeds the set time, "Driving time exceeds X, take a rest" will be displayed on information display area, at the same time, alarm sounds for 1 second and fatigue driving icon "" is showed to inform the driver to take a rest.

READ
The meter buzzer will sound in some alarm conditions.

OMT1D-1346

Step 1: On setting screen, press " ◀ "/" ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to switch to driving information. Dial down/short press " OK " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter driving information setting screen;

Step 2: Short press " ◀ "/" ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to select fatigue driving screen. Dial down " OK " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter fatigue driving screen;

Step 3: Short press " ◀ "/" ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to decrease/increase the time by 0.5 h. Short press " OK " of steering wheel combination buttons to save and return to setting screen;

Step 4: Dial down " OK " of steering wheel combination buttons to turn off fatigue driving. After that, dial up " OK " of steering wheel combination buttons to turn on fatigue driving and set the fatigue driving time.

READ
The fatigue driving time can be set circularly between 1 h to 4 h and OFF.

ESP function

OMT1D-1347

Step 1: On setting screen, press " ◀ "/" ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to switch to driving information. Dial down/short press " OK " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter driving information setting screen;

Step 2: Short press " ◀ "/" ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to select ESP function screen. Dial down " OK " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter ESP function screen;

Step 3: Short press " ◀ "/" ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to turn ESP function to ON/OFF. Short press " OK " of steering wheel combination buttons to save and return to setting screen.

READ

- Electronic Stability Control System (ESP) cannot be turned off during operation.
- When driving vehicle for the first time, Electronic Stability Control System (ESP) is on by default.

Maintenance mileage reset

OMT1D-1348

Step 1: On setting screen, press " ◀ "/" ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to switch to driving information. Dial down/short press " OK " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter driving information setting screen;

Step 2: Short press " ◀ "/" ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to select maintenance mileage screen. Dial down OK button " OK " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter maintenance mileage screen;

Step 3: Dial down " OK " of steering wheel combination buttons to reset. Short press " ◀ "/" ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to select YES. Short press " OK " of steering wheel combination buttons to reset maintenance mileage and return to setting screen.

Fault inquiry

When on-board computer detects that the system is malfunctioning or its information is abnormal, the alarm information will be immediately displayed in information display area one by one and recorded in fault information screen after switching vehicle power to ON mode.

OMT1D-1349

Step 1: On setting screen, press " ◀ "/" ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to switch to fault inquiry. Dial down/short press " OK " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter fault inquiry screen;

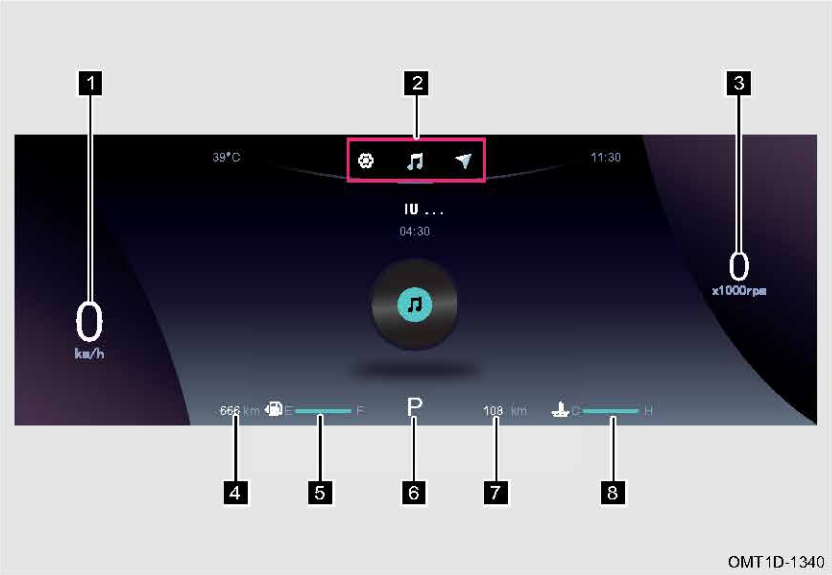
Step 2: If there are multiple pieces of abnormal information in the system, the information will be displayed in the information display area. Press " ◀ "/" ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to check the different abnormal information. Short press " OK " of steering wheel combination buttons to save and return to setting screen.

⚠ CAUTION

If an abnormal alarm prompt occurs, please check the vehicle according to the prompt information. If the fault cannot be eliminated, please turn off the engine, and go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

2-3. Instrument Cluster (Dual Display)

Instrument Cluster View



1 Speedometer: Current driving speed (unit: km/h).

⚠ CAUTION
Speedometer is affected by tire size used in vehicle. Only tires of original size can be used (For details, refer to "Vehicle Specifications"), otherwise the speedometer will not indicate the correct speed.

2 Conventional display screen (status bar): Current conventional display screen information.

3 Tachometer: Current engine speed (unit: x1000 rpm).

After break-in period of vehicle, it is allowed to reach the high engine speed range of 6000 - 8000 rpm. Do not drive vehicle within this range for a long time.

⚠ CAUTION
• Do not run engine at high speed during break-in period. • Do not keep engine speed at 6000 rpm or more for a long time, or engine may be seriously damaged.

4 Driving mileage: The estimated maximum distance that can be driven with current remaining fuel (common unit: km).

READ

Driving mileage is calculated by the on-board computer, it can only be used as a reference.

5 Fuel gauge: Current remaining fuel of fuel tank.

When fuel gauge indication is near E or the low fuel level warning indicator remains on, it indicates that remaining fuel is insufficient. Please add fuel as soon as possible.

READ

When the vehicle is accelerating, braking urgently, turning sharply or driving on a slope, the fuel gauge reading might be inaccurate.

6 Gear position information: Currently selected gear position information (in manual mode or the current gear position).

On-board computer displays arrow and target gear according to current conditions to prompt user to perform a reasonable shift operation:

" ↑ " prompts you to perform an upshift operation.

" ↓ " prompts you to perform a downshift operation.

READ

The information is for reference only. Always upshift or downshift according to actual situations.

7 Total mileage: Total mileage of the vehicle (common unit: km).

8 Engine coolant temperature gauge: Current engine coolant temperature.

Low temperature range: Near C or in C area

When engine coolant temperature gauge is near C or in C area, it indicates that engine coolant temperature is low. Within this temperature range, do not run engine at high speed and the engine load should not be excessive.

Overheating range: Near H or in H area

When engine coolant temperature gauge is near H or in H area, it indicates that engine coolant temperature is high. Stop vehicle at a safe place away from traffic main artery, turn vehicle power to OFF mode after idling for several minutes. Please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

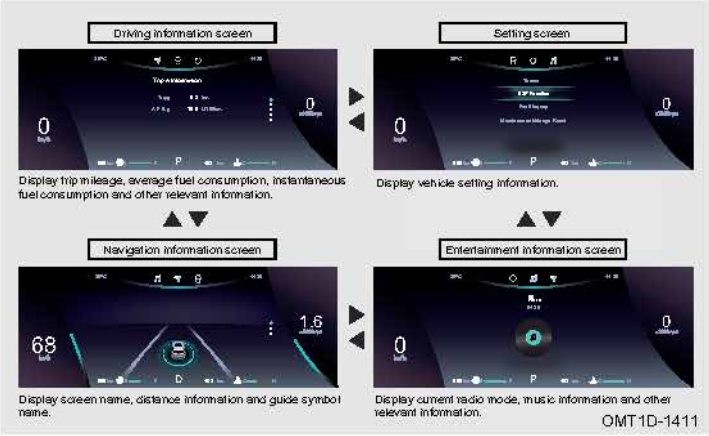
⚠ CAUTION

- If engine coolant temperature gauge indication remains in low temperature range for a long time, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
- Never open the coolant reservoir cap if engine coolant temperature gauge indication is in overheating range. Check if coolant level is too low after engine cools down. Never run engine when coolant level is too low, or the engine will be seriously damaged.

Information Display Area

Conventional display screen

Conventional display screen includes the following screens, press steering wheel combination button " ◀ " / " ▶ " briefly to cycle the following screens.

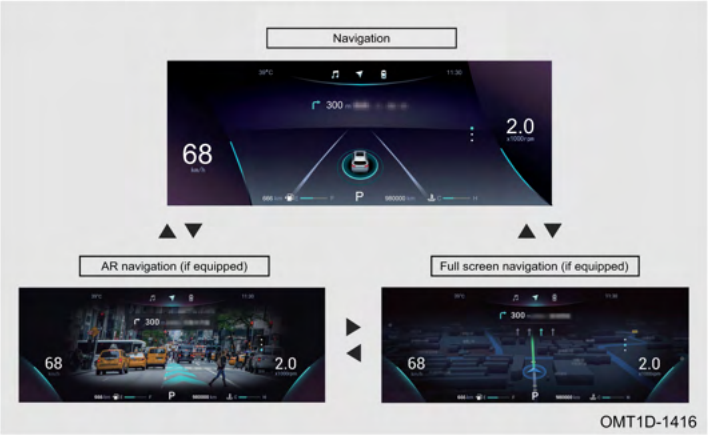


Driving information screen

On driving information screen, dial steering wheel combination button " OK " upward and downward to cycle the following screens.

Navigation information screen

On navigation information screen, dial steering wheel combination button " OK " upward and downward to cycle the following screens.



Note: AR navigation can only be displayed on audio system or instrument cluster at the same time. It does not support simultaneous display on the audio system and instrument cluster.

Setting

Theme setting

OMT1D-1343

Step 1: On setting screen, press steering wheel combination button " OK " upward and downward to theme setting. Short press " OK " to enter theme setting;

Step 2: On theme setting screen, press steering wheel combination button " OK " upward and downward to corresponding topic. Short press " OK " to set.

ESP function

OMT1D-1347

Step 1: On setting screen, press steering wheel combination button " OK " upward and downward to ESP function setting. Short press " OK " to enter ESP function setting;

Step 2: On ESP function setting screen, press steering wheel combination button " OK " upward and downward to ON/OFF. Short press " OK " to set.

READ

- When driving vehicle for the first time, electronic stability control system (ESP) is on by default.
- For details of Electronic Stability Control System (ESP), refer to "Braking Force Control System".

Fault inquiry

When on-board computer detects that the system is malfunctioning or its information is abnormal, the alarm information will be immediately displayed in information display area one by one and recorded in fault information screen after switching vehicle power to ON mode.

OMT1D-1345

Step 1: On setting screen, press steering wheel combination button " OK " upward and downward to fault inquiry. Short press " OK " button to enter fault inquiry;

Step 2: On fault screen, press steering wheel combination button " OK " upward and downward to check related fault information.

Maintenance mileage reset

OMT1D-1344

Step 1: On setting screen, press steering wheel combination button " OK " upward and downward to maintenance mileage reset. Short press " OK " button to enter maintenance mileage reset;

Step 2: On maintenance mileage reset screen, press steering wheel combination button " OK " upward and downward to Yes/No. Short press " OK " to set.

Non-adjustable overspeed alarm (if equipped)

When the speed reaches the 120 km/h, instrument cluster pops the alarm screen and alarm buzzer sounds. Warning text and sounds will disappear only when the speed is lower than 115 km/h. If the speed reaches 120 km/h again, it will alarm again.

2-4. Operation/Malfunction Indicator

Operation/Malfunction Indicator

When vehicle power is turned to ON mode, some malfunction indicators will come on for a short time, indicating system is performing self-check. If one system malfunction indicator remains on or flashes after starting the engine, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

The operation indicator is used to alert the operating condition of a certain vehicle' s system for driver and the corresponding operation indicator will come on.

Malfunction indicator is used to alert driver that a certain system of the vehicle is malfunctioning and the corresponding malfunction indicator will come on or flash.

item	Indicator	Description
Daytime running light indicator		Daytime running light indicator comes on when engine is started.
Position light indicator		When the position lights are turned on, the indicator comes on.
Turn signal light indicator		When the left or right turn signal lights are turned on, the corresponding turn signal indicator flashes. When hazard light switch is turned on, both left and right turn signal indicators will flash simultaneously.
Headlight high beam indicator		When the high beam lights are turned on or when the high beam lights flash, the indicator comes on.
Front fog light indicator		When front fog lights are turned on, the front fog light indicator will come on.
Rear fog light indicator		When rear fog lights are turned on, the rear fog light indicator will come on.
Intelligent Headlight (IHC) assist indicator		This indicator is used to indicate that the vehicle' s automatic headlights are in operating condition currently.

item	Indicator	Description
Intelligent headlight (IHC) assist malfuncti-on indicator		This indicator is used to indicate that the vehicle's automatic headlights are malfunctioning currently. Please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Front seat belt indicator		This indicator is used to alert the driver that the front seat belt is not buckled or not fastened firmly. Wear seat belt and drive safely.
Rear seat belt indicator		This indicator is used to alert the driver that the rear seat belt is not buckled or not fastened firmly. Wear seat belt and drive safely.
Brake system malfuncti-on indicator		This indicator is used to alert the driver that brake fluid level is low or brake system is malfunctioning. Please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
Electric Parking Brake (EPB) system indicator		This indicator comes on to indicate that the vehicle's EPB is in operating condition currently. The indicator flashes during sudden braking, it is normal and does not need to be dealt with. If it flashes in other cases, it indicates that the system is malfunctioning. Please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Electric Parking Brake (EPB) system malfuncti-on indicator		This indicator is used to alert the driver that EPB is malfunctioning. Please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Automatic Parking System (-AUTO HOLD) indicator	or	This indicator is used to indicate that the vehicle is in automatic parking condition currently.

item	Indicator	Description
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) malfunction indicator		This indicator is used to alert the driver that Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) is malfunctioning. Please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Hill Descent Control (HDC) system indicator		This indicator is used to indicate that the vehicle's Hill Descent Control (HDC) system is in operating condition currently.
Hill Descent Control (HDC) system malfunction indicator		This indicator is used to indicate that the vehicle's Hill Descent Control (HDC) system is malfunctioning currently. Please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Electronic Stability Program (ESP) system indicator		This indicator flashes to indicate that the vehicle's Electronic Stability Control (ESP) system is in operating condition currently. This indicator comes on to alert the driver that Electronic Stability Program (ESP) system is malfunctioning. Please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
ESP OFF indicator		When ESP function is turned off, ESP OFF indicator will come on, indicating that Electronic Stability Program (ESP) system is in disabled condition.
Low fuel level warning indicator		This indicator is used to alert the driver that vehicle is running out of fuel. Please add fuel as soon as possible.
Airbag (SRS) malfunction indicator		This indicator is used to alert the driver that Airbag (SRS) system is malfunctioning. Please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

item	Indicator	Description
Gasoline Particulate Filter (GPF) indicator (if equipped)		This indicator comes on to alert the driver that Gasoline Particulate Filter (GPF) is full, please increase the speed and clean it.
Gasoline Particulate Filter (GPF) malfuncti-on indicator (if equipped)		This indicator comes on to alert the driver that Gasoline Particulate Filter (GPF) is malfunctioning. Please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Charging system indicator		This indicator is used to indicate the operating condition of charging system. If this indicator does not come on when vehicle power is turned to ON mode, or comes on after engine starts, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Engine warming up indicator		This indicator is used to alert the driver that when engine coolant temperature is too low, engine is in warming up currently. After coolant temperature rises, the indicator goes off to indicate that the engine warm-up is completed currently.
High coolant temperatu-re warning indicator		This indicator is used to alert the driver that engine coolant temperature is high. Drive vehicle to a safe area and stop, turn vehicle power to OFF mode after idling for several minutes. Please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (-TPMS) malfuncti-on indicator		This indicator is used to indicate that tire pressure is improper. Please check if tire pressure is too low or if temperature is too high. If tire pressure is normal, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

item	Indicator	Description
Electric Power Steering (EPS) system malfunction indicator		This indicator is used to alert the driver that electric power steering system is malfunctioning. Please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
Low engine oil pressure warning indicator		This indicator is used to alert the driver that engine oil pressure is low. Drive vehicle to a safe area and stop. Please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
EPC malfunction indicator	EPC	This indicator is used to alert the driver that engine system is malfunctioning. Please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
Engine malfunction indicator		This indicator is used to alert the driver that engine is malfunctioning. Please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
Transmission malfunction indicator		This indicator is used to alert the driver that transmission system is malfunctioning. Please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

2-5. Steering Wheel

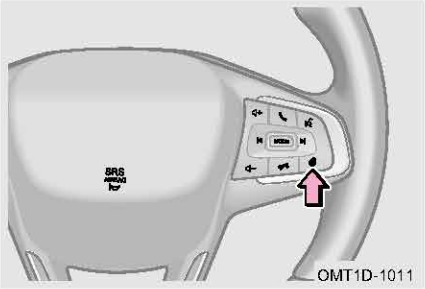
Horn

To sound the horn, press area near horn mark on the steering wheel.

READ

Obey local regulations regarding usage of vehicle horns.

Heated Steering Wheel (If Equipped)



OMT1D-1011

Press the switch to enable steering wheel heating function and indicator comes on at the same time. Press the switch again to cancel the function and the indicator turns off.

CAUTION

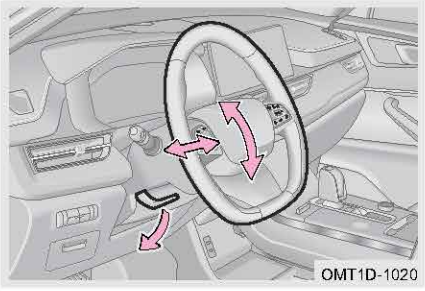
When the followings are met, the steering wheel heating function can be turned on:

- Engine is operating.
- Voltage of battery is in normal range.
- Steering heated switch is pressed.

When any of the followings are met, the function will turn off after it works for a period of time:

- Engine stops.
- Steering wheel is heated over 25 minutes.
- Steering heated switch is pressed again.
- When temperature of steering wheel is over 52°C, steering wheel heating function turns off; After that, when temperature of steering wheel is below 50°C, the function recovers.

Adjusting Steering Wheel


OMT1D-1020

Stop vehicle at a safe place away from traffic main artery, turn vehicle power to OFF mode:

Step 1: Push down adjustment lever and release it;

Step 2: Adjust steering wheel upward and downward/forward and backward to a comfortable angle;

Step 3: Hold steering wheel steady and push adjustment lever to original position;

Step 4: Check if the steering wheel is shaking. Repeat operations of step 3 if shaking.

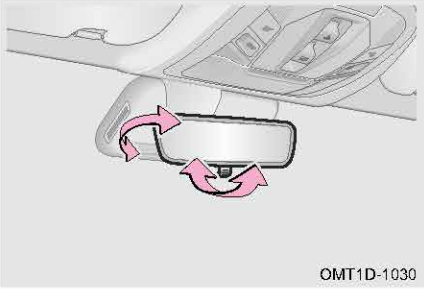
⚠ WARNING

- Do not adjust steering wheel while driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injuries.
- Make sure the steering wheel is securely locked before driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injuries.

2-6. Rear View Mirror

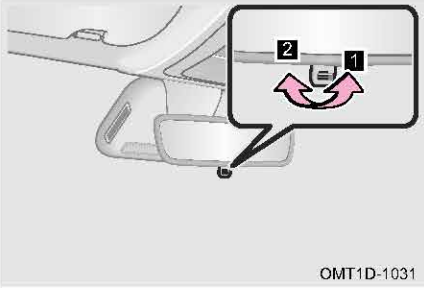
Manual Inside Rear View Mirror

Adjusting inside rear view mirror position



Adjust inside rear view mirror to a proper position before driving, to make sure that driver can achieve an optimum view.

Adjusting anti-glare position

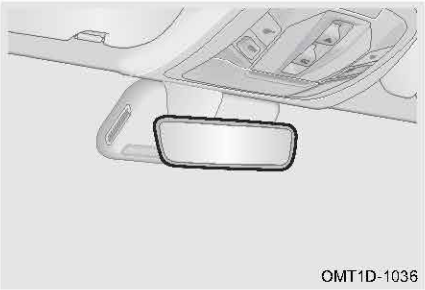


Before driving at night, adjust the inside rear view mirror lever to the anti-glare position, which can reduce the reflected light from the headlights of vehicles behind.

1 Anti-glare position

2 Normal position

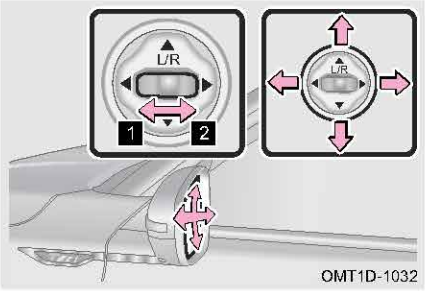
Automatic Inside Rear View Mirror (If Equipped)



When driving at night, the light sensor installed in front/rear of the inside rear view mirror automatically detects the reflected light from the headlights of vehicles behind and automatically adjusts the lens angle to reduce the reflected light from the headlights of vehicles behind.

Outside Rear View Mirror

Adjusting outside rear view mirror



Stop vehicle at a safe place away from traffic main artery, turn vehicle power to ON mode:

1 Move the adjustment switch to left to adjust position of left outside rear view mirror lens

2 Move the adjustment switch to right to adjust position of right outside rear view mirror lens

Adjust outside rear view mirror lens upward

Adjust outside rear view mirror lens downward

Adjust outside rear view mirror lens to the left

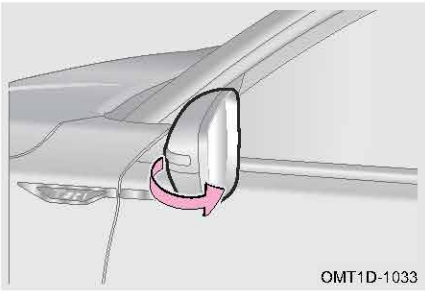
Adjust outside rear view mirror lens to the right

WARNING

- Do not adjust outside rear view mirror while driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injuries.
- Image displayed on outside rear view mirror may differ from the actual, so always drive carefully.

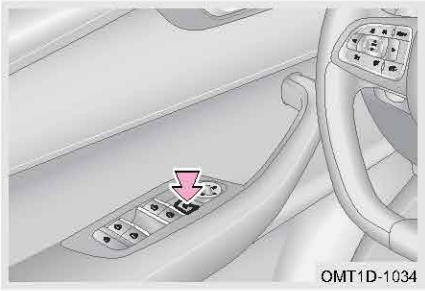
Folding/extending outside rear view mirror

■ Manual type



Hold the outside rear view mirror, and push it to the backward firmly and slowly (force increases gradually from small to large) until it folds into position; Hold edge of the outside rear view mirror, and pull forward slightly until it extends in place.

■ Power type



Operate using switch: When vehicle power is turned to ON mode, press outside rear view mirror folding switch to fold mirrors automatically, press the switch again to extend mirrors automatically.

Operate using key: In fortifying/deactivation mode, outside rear view mirror will fold/extend automatically.

READ

- Outside rear view mirror automatic folding needs to be set in audio system. For details, refer to "Audio System".
- According to visual field requirements, folding angles of the left and right outside rear view mirrors are different. Therefore, when power outside rear view mirrors automatically fold, the left and right outside rear view mirrors are not synchronized, which is normal.

CAUTION

- Do not fold/extend the power outside rear view mirror manually, otherwise it may cause the folding function to fail.
- When folding/extending the outside rear view mirror, do not touch its surface to prevent damage to it with excessive force.
- In cold winter, it is recommended to turn off the outside rear view mirror automatic folding function. This can prevent the outside rear view mirror from being frozen in folding position due to accumulated snow or rain.

Outside Rear View Mirror Memory Function (If Equipped)

After adjusting the outside rear view mirror position, a dialog box will pop up on audio head unit, asking whether to save the current position to the common position, leisure position or comfortable position, and select one of the points to confirm the preservation.

When you need to recall outside rear view mirror memory position (current smart key ID), select common position, leisure position or comfortable position on audio head unit setting screen. At the same time, correlate the seat memory function to the corresponding position.

READ

- The binding function between seat memory and smart key need to be set in audio system. For details, refer to "Audio System".
- If the binding between seat memory and smart key is turned off, no dialog box will pop up from audio head unit after adjusting outside rear view mirror.

Automatic Flip-down Function of Outside Rear View Mirror When Reversing (If Equipped)

When vehicle is reversing (shift lever is in R), outside rear view mirror will flip down automatically, so that you can see the curb below; If your visual field cannot be satisfied, you can adjust position of lens via rear view mirror switch. When shifting out of R position, the position will be saved automatically (-outside rear view mirror automatic flipping down position).

■ Automatic flip-down function of outside rear view mirror when reversing will return to position before flipping down under following conditions:

1. When shifting out of R position.
2. When vehicle speed is > 10 km/h.
3. When vehicle power is switched to OFF mode.

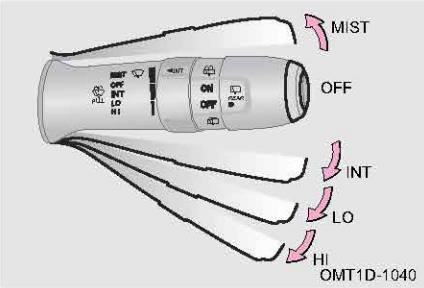
READ

Automatic flip-down function of outside rear view mirror when reversing needs to be set in audio system. For details, refer to "Audio System".

2-7. Wiper System

Wiper Operation

Wiper combination switch



Turn vehicle power to ON mode, move the wiper combination switch:

Mist mode "MIST": Wipers will stop after wiping once.

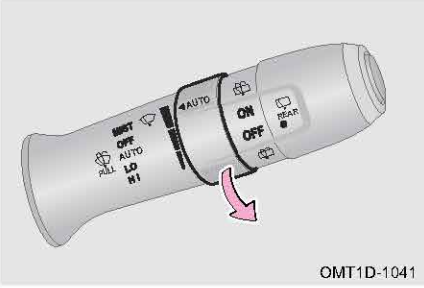
Low speed mode "LO": Operate slowly and continuously.

High speed mode "HI": Operate quickly and continuously.

Stop mode "OFF": Operate automatically at low speed until wipers return to stop position.

Intermittent mode "INT": Operate intermittently, wipers operate automatically for a cycle at intervals of several seconds.

To control intermittent sensitivity of wiper, adjust "INT" sensitivity knob. Rotate downward to decrease interval and rotate upward to increase.



Auto mode "AUTO" (if equipped): Control the wiping speed of the wiper according to amount of rainfall.

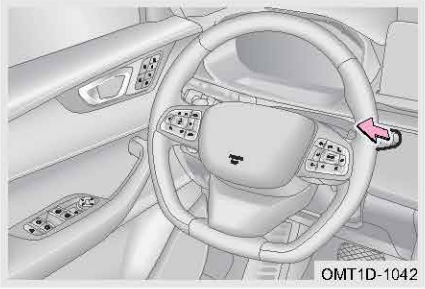
To control wiper sensitivity, adjust "-AUTO" sensitivity knob. Rotate downward to increase sensitivity and rotate upward to decrease sensitivity.

READ
When front wiper is operating, shift the shift lever to R, the rear wiper will work automatically.

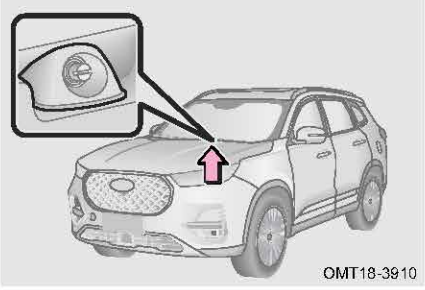
⚠ CAUTION

- Do not operate wiper when the windshield is dry, as this may damage wiper blade or scratch the windshield.
- Do not operate wipers if there are obstacles on windshield, as this may scratch the windshield and damage wiper motor.
- In cold winter, always check if wiper blade is frozen onto windshield before using wipers. If so, unfrozen it before using, otherwise it may damage wiper blade and wiper motor.

Front washer operation

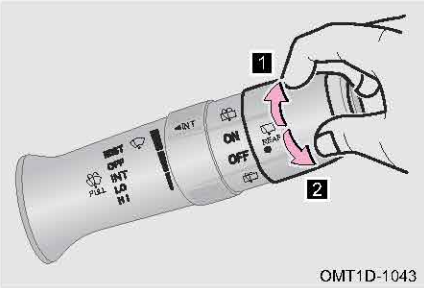


Turn vehicle power to ON mode, pull wiper combination switch towards the steering wheel and hold, the front washer sprays water, and front wiper operates simultaneously. Front washer will stop operating when the switch is released, the wiper will wipe 3 cycles at low speed, and operate one cycle then stop after a few seconds.



Front washer nozzles are located on front windshield trim panel.

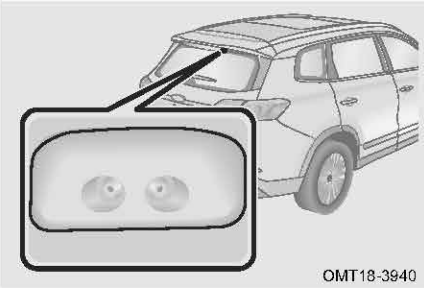
Rear washer operation



OMT1D-1043

1 Turn vehicle power to ON mode and rotate wiper combination switch " REAR " to "ON" position, rear wiper operates. Rotate it to "OFF" position, rear wiper is turned off.

2 Turn vehicle power to ON mode and rotate wiper combination switch " REAR " to " " position and hold, rear washer sprays water, and rear wiper operates simultaneously. After releasing, they stop working.


OMT18-3940

The rear washer nozzle is located above the rear windshield and below the high brake light.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not operate wiper combination switch when there is no washer fluid in reservoir.
- When operating wiper combination switch to spray water, do not exceed 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not try to clear a nozzle with a pin or other objects when it becomes blocked, or it will be damaged.
- The antifreeze will corrode the painted surface, so take care to prevent the wrong antifreeze filling during the adding the washer fluid.
- Do not mix water with the washer. Water may cause the solution to freeze and damage the washing tank and other parts of the washer system.

Wiper Nozzle Heating Function (If Equipped)

When the followings are met, turn on front wiper nozzle heating function:

- Battery voltage is within the normal range.
- Outside temperature is < 2°C for 5 s or more.
- Engine start stop switch is in ON or after engine starts.

After the function is turned on, front wiper nozzle heating function turns off when any of the following conditions are met:

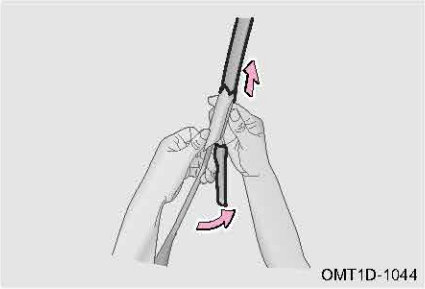
- ENGINE START STOP switch is turned to OFF or ACC.

The function interrupts during the wiper nozzle heating:

- When engine starts, front wiper nozzle heating function interrupts, and after engine starts, the heating function will recover automatically.
- When outside temperature is > 4°C for 5 s or more, front wiper nozzle heating function interrupts; When outside temperature is < 2°C for 5 s or more, the heating function will recover automatically.

Wiper Blade Replacement

Replacing front wiper blades



Step 1: Move wiper combination switch to mist mode "MIST" within 3 seconds after turning vehicle power to OFF mode, it will enter repair mode;

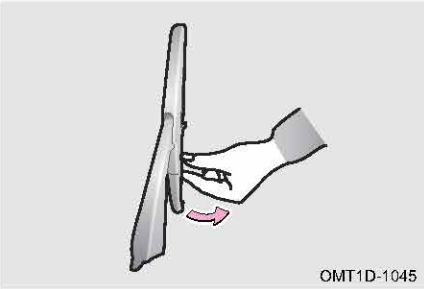
Step 2: Lift the front wiper arm and hold;

Step 3: After rotating to limit position counterclockwise, push wiper blades upward while pressing the lock button, so as to remove the blades;

Step 4: Install the new wiper blades in reverse order, and make sure the fixing clamp is locked firmly;

Step 5: Check that front wipers operate properly.

Replacing rear wiper blade



Step 1: Lift the rear wiper arm and hold;

Step 2: Separate the wiper blade by hand as shown in the illustration;

Step 3: Install the new wiper blade in reverse order, and be sure to install them in place;

Step 4: Check that rear wiper operate properly.

READ

It is recommended to go to Chery authorized service station to perform wiper blades replacement by after-sales personnel.

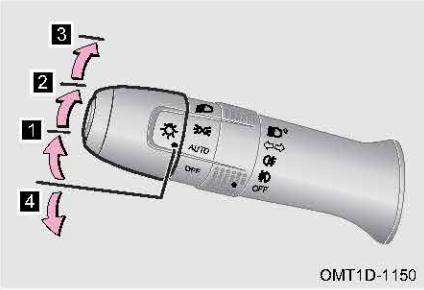
CAUTION

Make sure the wiper arm returns to its original position before driving, otherwise it may damage the vehicle and cause an accident.

2-8. Lighting System

Exterior Lighting

Headlight combination switch



Turn vehicle power to ON mode, rotate headlight combination switch:

1 Auto-sensing headlight "AUTO": Position lights, low beam lights and license plate lights are ON by automatically sensing intensity of exterior light.

2 Position lights " ": Turn on position lights, license plate lights, ambient lights and backlights.

3 Low beam lights " ": Turn on headlight low beam lights and keep position lights come on.

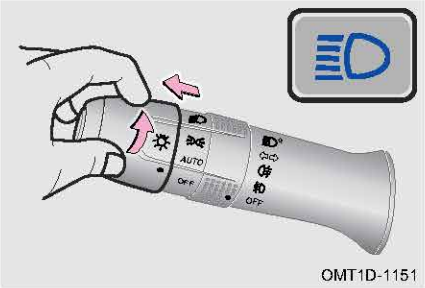
4 Turning off "OFF": Turn off headlight function.

READ

When parking vehicle for a long time or before leaving vehicle, make sure that headlight combination switch is turned off to prevent the battery from discharging. Failure to do so may cause the vehicle cannot be started.

Headlight high beam

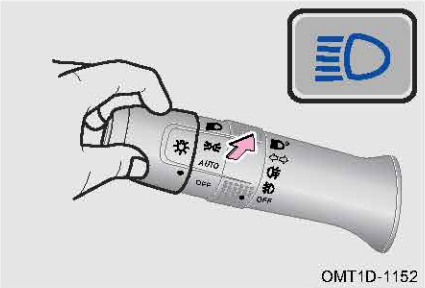
■ High beam lights



OMT1D-1151

Turn vehicle power to ON mode, when turning on low beam lights, pull headlight combination switch away from steering wheel side and release to turn on headlight high beam; Pull headlight combination switch towards steering wheel side and release to turn off headlight high beam.

■ High beam lights flash

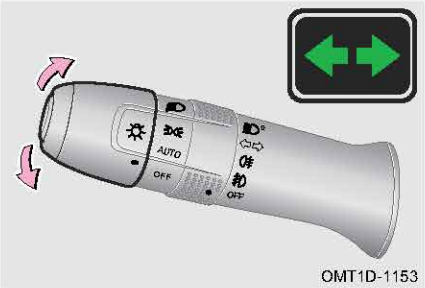


OMT1D-1152

Turn vehicle power to ON mode, pull headlight combination switch towards the steering wheel and release it to flash the high beam lights once. At the same time, headlight high beam indicator in instrument cluster flashes once.

READ
High beam lights can flash when the low beam lights are off.

Turn signal lights



OMT1D-1153

Turn vehicle power to ON mode:

Dial headlight combination switch upward, right turn signal light indicator comes on; Dial headlight combination switch downward, left turn signal light indicator comes on.

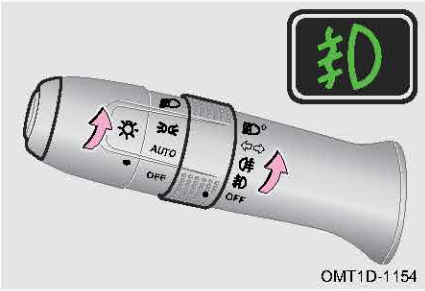
When turn signal lights are turned on, turn signal light indicator in instrument cluster flashes. As vehicle is turning back after turning, combination switch automatically returns to center position.

■ Lane change assist function

Turn vehicle power to ON mode, pull turn signal light switch once but not over steering point, and turn signal lights flash 3 times.

READ
During small angle steering, headlight combination switch may not automatically return to original position.

Front fog lights (if equipped)



OMT1D-1154

Turn vehicle power to ON mode, when position lights turn on, turn fog light knob to " " position to turn on front fog lights; Turn vehicle power to OFF mode or turn fog light knob to " " position again, front fog lights turn off.

READ
• When turning off position lights, front fog lights turn off at the same time. • Obey local regulations regarding usage of fog lights.

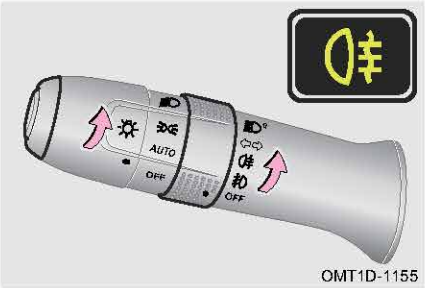
■ Front fog lights assist lighting (if equipped)

Turn vehicle power to ON mode, when vehicle speed is < 40 km/h and low beam lights turn on:

Method 1: Front fog lights turn on automatically when turn signal lights are turned on; Front fog lights go off when turn signal lights are turned off.

Method 2: During steering at a large angle, front fog lights turn on automatically; During steering wheel returning, front fog lights turn off.

Rear fog lights



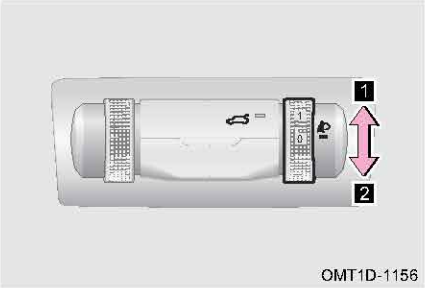
OMT1D-1155

Turn vehicle power to ON mode, when front fog lights or low beam lights turn on, turn fog light knob to " " position to turn on rear fog lights; After turning vehicle power to OFF mode or turning fog light knob to " " position again, rear fog lights turn off.

READ

- When turning off front fog lights or low beam lights, rear fog lights turn off at the same time.
- Obey local regulations regarding usage of fog lights.

Headlight leveling switch (if equipped)



OMT1D-1156

Headlight beam leveling knob includes 4 positions (0, 1, 2, 3), and it can be adjusted according to occupant quantity and vehicle load.

When headlight beam leveling knob is at 0, the headlight beam is at the highest position.

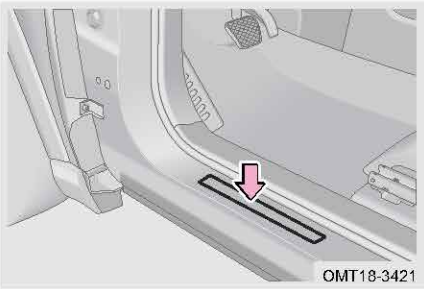
1 Push the leveling knob up to raise the level of the headlight beam.

2 Push the leveling knob down to lower the level of the headlight beam.

Set headlight leveling adjusting switch as following table:

Occupant & Luggage Load		Switch Position
Occupant	Luggage Load	
Driver	None	0
Driver + front passenger	None	1
All seats occupied	None	2
All seats occupied	Fully loaded	3
Driver	Fully loaded	2

Courtesy light (if equipped)



Carry the smart key to approach vehicle, the system automatically recognizes the legality of smart key. Open the door, courtesy light will come on.

Stop lights

Depress the brake pedal, stop light and high mounted stop light turn on.

Back-up lights

Turn vehicle power to ON mode, shift the shift lever to R, back-up lights turn on.

License plate lights

Turn vehicle power to ON mode and rotate headlight combination switch to " " position to turn on license plate lights. They are used to illuminate license plate in dark.

Ground-down lights (if equipped)

■ Static ground-down lights

Turn vehicle power to OFF mode, four doors, hood and back door are closed, position lights are not turned on. Static ground-down lights are turned on after vehicle is unlocked/locked.

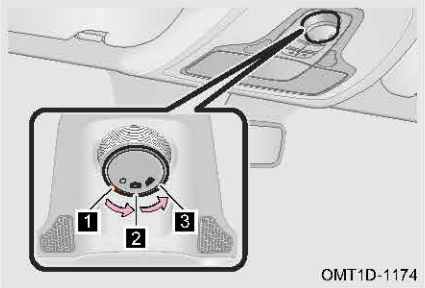
■ Automatic sensing ground-down lights

Approach the vehicle when carrying smart key on your person while vehicle is locked, the automatic sensing ground-down lights will turn on automatically.

Interior Lighting

Front dome light

■ Knob type dome light

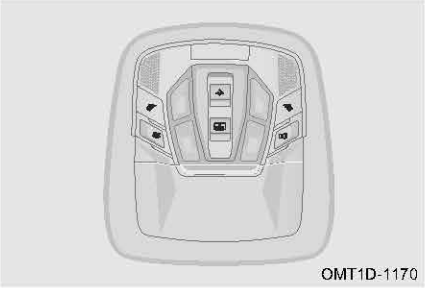


1 Dome light switch: Turn switch to " ○ " position, at door control switch/ map position, light will be turned off.

2 Door control switch: Turn switch to " " position, if any door is opened and keep opening, dome lights will be on for 3 min (fade in and out).

3 Map position: Turn switch to " " to turn light on.

■ Button type dome light



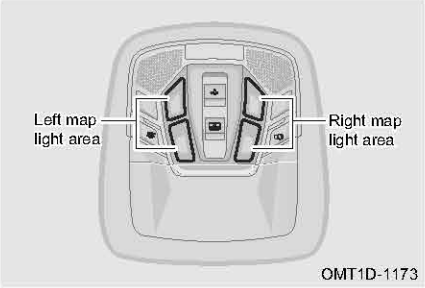
Press " " switch, illumination light will come on.

Press " " switch, if any door is open and remains open, illumination light and second row dome light will come on.

Press " " switch, left map light will come on.

Press " " switch, right map light will come on.

■ Touch type dome light



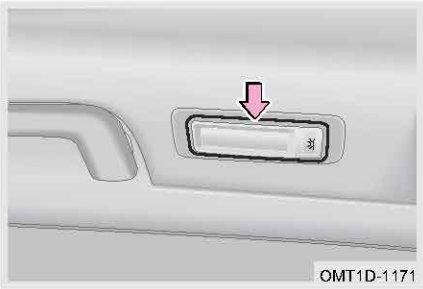
Press " " switch, illumination light will come on.

Press " " switch, if any door is open and remains open, illumination light and second row dome light will come on.

Touch transparent area of left map light cover, left map light will come on.

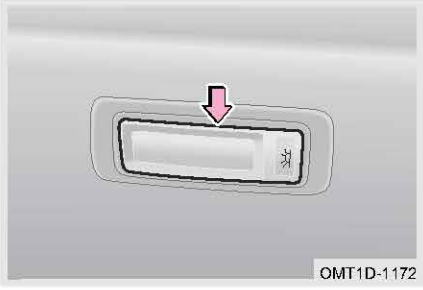
Touch transparent area of right map light cover, right map light will come on.

Second row dome light



Press second row dome light switch, the second row dome light comes on, press the switch again to turn off light.

Third row dome light

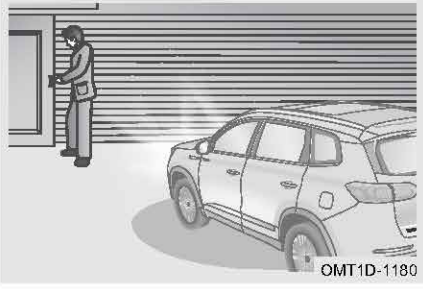


Press third row dome light switch, the third row dome light comes on, press the switch again to turn off light.

Open the back door, the third row dome light comes on automatically; Close the back door, the third row dome light goes off immediately.

Follow Me Home Function

Manual mode (non-auto sensing headlights)



ON: Turn vehicle power to OFF mode, pull the headlight combination switch towards steering wheel side and release within 2 minutes, the follow me home function is activated. The low beam lights and position lights will come on. Each time the headlight combination switch is operated, the low beam lights and position lights will turn on for 30 seconds, which can be activated up to 8 times continuously.

OFF: Pull the headlight combination switch towards steering wheel side and hold for 2 seconds, the follow me home function will be turned off manually; When the set operating time is reached, the follow me home function will be turned off automatically, low beam lights and position lights will turn off immediately.

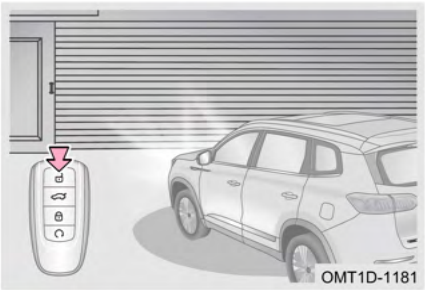
Auto mode (auto-sensing headlights)

ON: Rotate the headlight combination switch to "AUTO" position. When the vehicle is in a dim environment, press lock button on smart key, vehicle is fortified successfully. Low beam lights and position lights automatically come on for 30 seconds. Press lock button on smart key to activate it again.

OFF: When the headlight combination switch is not in "AUTO" position or reaches the set operating time, the follow me home function will be turned off automatically. Low beam lights and position lights will go off immediately.

Smart Vehicle Locating Function

Manual mode (non-auto sensing headlights)



Turn vehicle power to OFF mode, press unlock button on smart key to activate the smart vehicle locating function. The low beam lights and position lights will come on for 60 seconds. Press unlock button on smart key again for a delay of 60 seconds.

READ

For non-auto sensing headlights, it is necessary to activate follow me home function before leaving vehicle to enable smart vehicle locating function.

Auto mode (auto-sensing headlights)

Turn vehicle power to OFF mode, rotate the headlight combination switch to "-AUTO" position before stopping. When the vehicle is in a dim environment, press unlock button on smart key, the low beam lights and position lights will come on for 30 seconds.

Adaptive Headlight System (AFS) (If Equipped)

When vehicle speed is higher than 10 km/h during steering, adjust left/right steering angle of headlight in time to increase light covering area of headlight and improve driver's visual range, which assists driver to recognize obstacles, foreign matters and pedestrians around driving route in advance and improve driving safety.

READ

- When vehicle speed is less than 10km/h, Adaptive Headlight System (AFS) exits.
- When headlight high beam turns on, Adaptive Headlight System (AFS) does not operate.
- Avoid operating headlight frequently, Adaptive Headlight System (AFS) does not operate for slight steering changes.

Intelligent High Beam Assist (IHC) (If Equipped)

Turn vehicle power to ON mode, and turn the headlight combination switch to "AUTO" position. When the low beam light is automatically turned on, pull the headlight combination switch away from steering wheel side and release, then the white indicator " " on instrument cluster comes on, and Intelligent High Beam Assist (IHC) is activated; When Intelligent High Beam Assist (IHC) is activated and vehicle speed is higher than 40 km/h, Intelligent High Beam Assist (IHC) automatically turns headlight high beam on/off according to road conditions, such as meeting, following, and overtaking.

When Intelligent High Beam Assist (IHC) is activated, the headlight high beam turns on or flashes, the white indicator " " on instrument cluster goes off. Pull the headlight combination switch away from the steering wheel side and release, Intelligent High Beam Assist (IHC) is reactivated.

READ

- Intelligent High Beam Assist (IHC) needs to be set in audio system (for details, refer to "Audio System").
- When the ambient brightness is too high, Intelligent High Beam Assist (IHC) turns off the headlight high beam automatically.
- When the vehicle speed is lower than 30 km/h, Intelligent High Beam Assist (IHC) turns off the headlight high beam automatically.
- When the left/right turn signal light is activated, Intelligent High Beam Assist (IHC) can not turn the headlight high beam on/off automatically.

Light Fogging Instructions

When the weather is cold or humid, inner side of lights will fog up due to difference in temperature between the inside and outside of lens. After lights turn on for a period of time, the mist inside the lens will gradually disappear, and there may still be some mist at the edge of the lens. This is normal. This mist has no effect on service life of lighting system. The vehicle lights generate mist, which gradually begins to disappear in the lens of the headlight within 30 minutes after the low and high beam lights are turned on. After a period of lighting, the mist disappears naturally. This is normal.

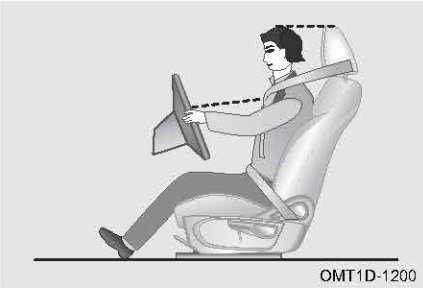
WARNING

- Following vehicle wading requirements (for example: water depth, speed, etc.) when wading, otherwise water may enter the lights.
- After opening light dust cover, install it in place at the end of operation, otherwise water may enter the lights.
- When replacing a bulb, strictly check installation of various light components to make sure that they are installed correctly and sealed properly. When installing rear cover, check its seal ring and keep it clean! Otherwise, it will lead to the serious consequences of water and dust entering lights!
- It is strictly forbidden to flush the engine compartment with a high pressure water gun, in particular, the lights cannot be flushed. Due to high pressure of high pressure water gun, accessories on lights may be loose or fall off, vent hole and wire harness connector may damp, resulting in water infiltration or moisture not dispersing for a long time, and even severe condensation.

2-9. Seats

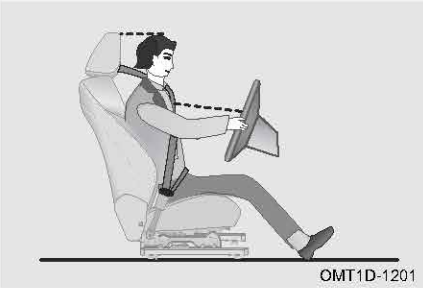
Correct Sitting Posture

The seats, head restraints, seat belts and airbags (SRS) are helpful to protect passengers. Using them adequately will provide you with more protection.



When sitting, slightly incline rearward (25° backward from vertical position is proper) and well back on seatback.

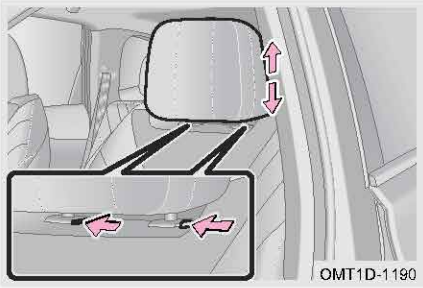
The front seats must not be too close to the instrument panel. The driver should hold the steering wheel with slightly bent arms during driving. His/her feet should also be bent slightly so that he/she can fully depress the pedal. Adjust head restraints properly so that the top of the head restraint is closest to the top of your head.



The shoulder belt should be over the shoulder center and close to the chest, kept away from the neck, the lap belt should be closed to the hips but not stomach.

Head Restraints

Adjusting head restraint



Adjust head restraint upward: Pull it up directly to a proper height.

Adjust head restraint downward: Press the unlock button on the inside/outside of head restraint to unlock, then adjust the head restraint downwards.

Remove head restraints: Press and hold 2 release buttons at the same time until unlocked, then lift the head restraint straight up and pull it out completely.

Install head restraints: Align the head restraint with the installation holes and push it down to lock position.

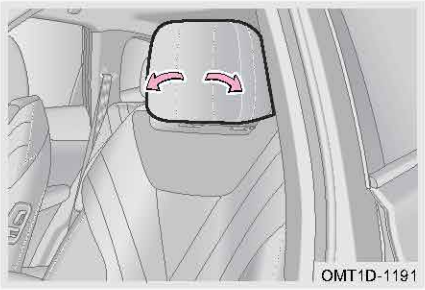
READ

The head restraint unlocking methods are different depending on the configuration of the vehicle. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

WARNING

- Do not adjust head restraints while driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injuries.
- Make sure the head restraints are securely locked before driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injuries.

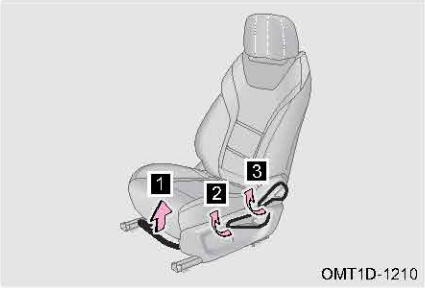
Aviation headrest (if equipped)



You can adjust angle of both wings of headrest for the aviation headrest (as shown in the figure), and the deployment status is the same as that of ordinary headrest; The aviation headrest improves the comfort of headrest lateral support, effectively relieving the discomfort caused by turbulence, impact and long distance driving during driving.

Front Seats

Manual seats (if equipped)



1 Adjusting seat forward and backward

Pull grip up and move the seat back and forth to adjust the seat position. After adjusting seat to a desired position, release the grip. Then, shake the seat forward and backward to make sure that the seat is locked properly.

2 Adjusting seat height (only driver side)

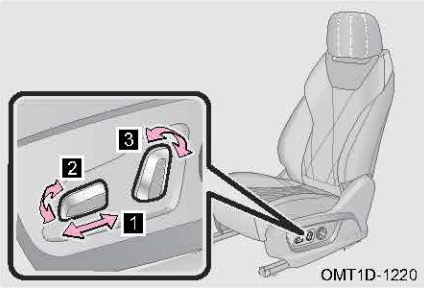
Pull up and push down seat adjustment lever to adjust seat height.

3 Adjusting seatback angle

Lean your body against seatback, and then pull seatback adjustment lever upward. Adjust seatback to desired angle by changing tilt angle of your body and release the lever. After that, apply force backward against the seatback to make sure that the seatback is locked properly.

Power seats

■ Adjusting driver power seat (if equipped)



1 Adjusting seat forward and backward

Move button forward and backward parallel to adjust seat position.

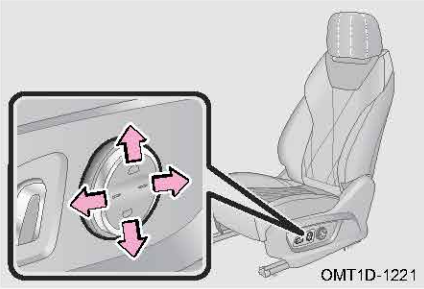
2 Adjusting seat height (only driver side)

Move front end of button upward and downward to adjust seat upward and downward.

3 Adjusting seatback angle

Move upper end of button forward and backward to adjust seatback angle.

■ Adjusting driver power seat waist (if equipped)



Long press "⇧" to support upper part of waist and reduce support to lower part of waist.

Long press "⇩" to support lower part of waist and reduce support to upper part of waist.

Long press "⇦" to increase support to overall forward side of waist.

Long press "⇨" to reduce support to overall forward side of waist.

■ Front passenger power seat captain button (if equipped)

1 Adjusting seat forward and backward

Move button forward and backward parallel to adjust seat position.

2 Adjusting seatback angle

Move upper end of button forward and backward to adjust seatback angle.

Note: When front seat is at designed position, it can be adjusted 200 mm forward and 40 mm backward; When it is at designed angle, it can be adjusted 30° forward and 50° backward.

READ

There is a limit position for waist support adjustment. When reaching the limit position, release the adjusting button in time.

CAUTION

Do not place any items under the seat while moving the seat, otherwise it will damage the seat.

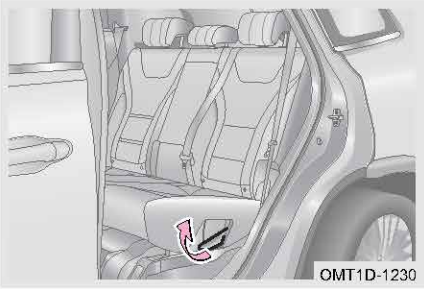
WARNING

- Do not adjust seat while driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injuries.
- Avoid reclining seatback any more than needed, the seat belts provide maximum protection in a frontal or rear collision when the driver and the front passenger slightly incline backward and well back in their seats while sitting.

Second Row Seat

Second row seat (5-seat)

■ Adjusting seatback

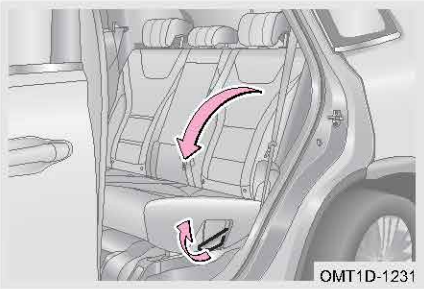


Step 1: Lean on the seatback first, then pull seatback adjustment lever upwards;

Step 2: Adjust seatback to the desired angle by body leaning and release the lever;

Step 3: Apply force backward against the seatback to ensure that the seatback is locked properly.

■ Folding seatback



Step 1: Adjust the front seat position forward;

Step 2: Adjust height of second row seat head restraints, remove them if necessary and fold up center armrest.

Step 3: Pull seatback adjustment lever upwards, and slowly lower the seatback with your hand.

Note: When second row seat (5-seat) is at designed position, it can be adjusted 16° forward and 6° backward.

READ

- Seat configuration is different depending on vehicle configuration. Please refer to your real vehicle.
- When folding seatback, make sure that outer seat belt passes around the seatback to avoid damaging the belt.

WARNING

Do not adjust seat while driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injuries.

Second row seat (6-seat), (7-seat)

■Adjusting seat position forward and backward

Step 1: Pull adjusting grip on front and rear positions of seat upward;

Step 2: Adjust the seat to desired position and release grip;

Step 3: Shake the seat forward and backward to make sure that the seat is locked properly.

■ Adjusting seatback

Step 1: Lean on the seatback first, then pull seatback adjustment lever upwards;

Step 2: Adjust seatback to the desired angle by body leaning and release the lever;

Step 3: Apply force backward against the seatback to ensure that the seatback is locked properly.

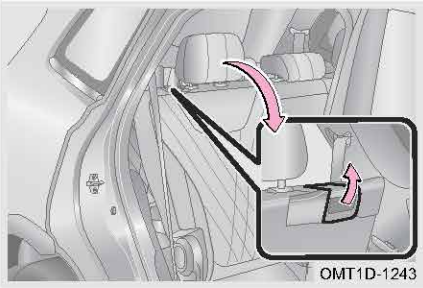
■ Folding seatback

Step 1: Adjust the front seat position forward;

Step 2: Adjust height of second row seat head restraints, remove them if necessary and fold up center armrest.

Step 3: Pull seatback adjustment lever upwards, and slowly lower the seatback with your hand.

■ Seat EASY ENTRY (if equipped)



Step 1: Pull up EASY ENTRY operation handle at upper part of seatback;

Step 2: Fold the second row seatback and push the seat to foremost position;

Step 3: After entering and leaving the third row seat, slide the second row seat to rearmost position and pull backward the seatback until it is locked, accompanied by a click sound;

Step 4: Shake the seat forward and backward, apply force backward against the seatback to make sure that the seat is locked properly.

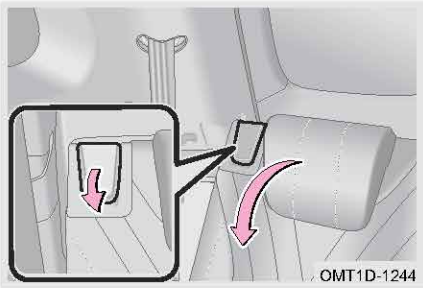
Note: When second row seat (6-seat), (7-seat) is at designed position, it can be adjusted 120 mm forward and 40 mm backward; When it is at designed angle, it can be adjusted 30° forward and 12° backward.

READ
When folding seatback, make sure that outer seat belt passes around the seatback to avoid damaging the belt.

WARNING
Do not adjust seat while driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injuries.

Third Row Seat (If Equipped)

Third row seat (6-seat), (7-seat)



Step 1: Adjust height of third row seat head restraints, remove them if necessary;

Step 2: Pull seatback adjustment lever upward, and slowly lower the seatback with your hand, the rear seatback is flush with back door carpet after folding.

Note: When third row seat (6-seat), (7-seat) is at designed position, it can be adjusted 6° forward and 4° backward.

READ

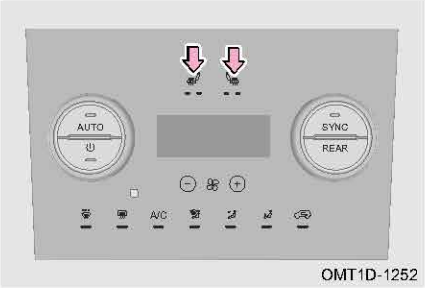
When folding seatback, make sure that outer seat belt passes around the seatback to avoid damaging the belt.

WARNING

Do not adjust seat while driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injuries.

Seat Heating Function (If Equipped)

Front seat heating (model A)



OMT1D-1252

After starting the vehicle, first click " " button/" " button is driver/front passenger 2-level seat heating (2 indicators come on). Click it again to enable 1-level heating (1 indicator comes on); Click it for the third time to turn off the seat heating.

Front seat heating (model B)

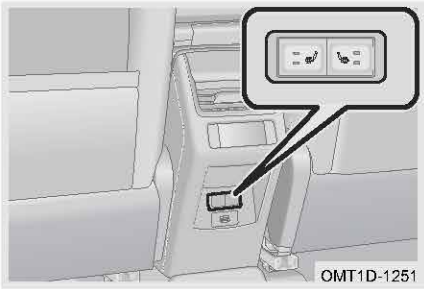
OMT1D-1250

After starting the vehicle, first click " " button/" " button is driver/front passenger 2-level seat heating (2 indicators come on). Click it again to enable 1-level heating (1 indicator comes on); Click it for the third time to turn off the seat heating.

READ

Front seat heating and front seat ventilation cannot be turned on simultaneously.

Second row seat heating


OMT1D-1251

After starting the vehicle, first click " " switch/" " switch is left/right 2-level heating (2 indicators come on). Click it again to enable 1-level heating (1 indicator comes on); Click it for the third time to turn off the seat heating.

Seat Ventilation Function (If Equipped)

Front seat ventilation

OMT1D-1260

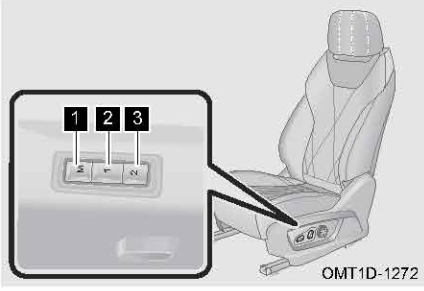
After starting the vehicle, first click " " button/" " button is driver/front passenger 2-level ventilation (2 indicators come on). Click it again to enable 1-level ventilation (1 indicator comes on); Click it for the third time to turn off the seat ventilation.

READ

Front seat heating and front seat ventilation cannot be turned on simultaneously.

Seat Memory Function (If Equipped)

Switch operations (model A)



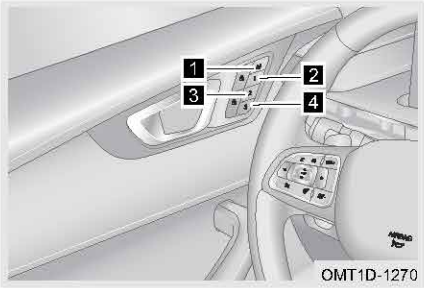
OMT1D-1272

1. Seat memory setting switch
2. Seat memory position 1 switch
3. Seat memory position 2 switch

Press seat memory setting switch, immediately press the seat memory position 1 switch/seat memory position 2 switch after instrument cluster emits a prompt tone, the corresponding positions are stored to seat memory position 1/seat memory position 2, instrument cluster indicates memory position has been completed at the same time.

Long press seat memory position 1 switch/seat memory position 2 switch until the seat operates, and then release the finger, seat will automatically move to the corresponding position.

Switch operations (model B)



OMT1D-1270

1 Seat memory setting switch
2 Seat memory position 1 switch
3 Seat memory position 2 switch
4 Seat memory position 3 switch

Press seat memory setting switch, immediately press the seat memory position 1 switch/seat memory position 2 switch/seat memory position 3 switch after instrument cluster emits a prompt tone, the corresponding positions are stored to seat memory position 1/seat memory position 2/seat memory position 3, instrument cluster indicates memory position has been completed at the same time.

Long press seat memory position 1 switch/seat memory position 2 switch/seat memory position 3 switch until the seat operates, and then release the finger, seat will automatically move to the corresponding position.

Audio Operation

OMT1D-1271

After adjusting the seat position, a dialog box will pop up on audio head unit, asking whether to save the current position to the common position, leisure position or comfortable position, and select one of the points to confirm the preservation.

When you need to recall seat memory position (current smart key ID), select common position, leisure position, comfortable position on audio head unit setting screen. At the same time, correlate the outside rear view mirror memory function to the corresponding position.

READ

- The binding between seat memory and smart key need to be set in audio system. For details, refer to "Audio System".
- If the binding between seat memory and smart key binding is turned off, no dialog box will pop up from audio head unit after adjusting seats.

Easy Seat Access Function (If Equipped)

Vehicle power is switched from ON to OFF mode and open driver door, driver seat automatically moves backward a certain distance so that driver can get off conveniently.

Vehicle power is switched from OFF to ACC mode, driver seat automatically moves forward to seat memory function commonly used mode (current smart key ID).

Under remote control, open driver door, driver seat automatically moves backward a certain distance, depress the brake pedal, driver seat automatically moves forward to seat memory function commonly used mode (-current smart key ID).

READ

If seat memory function does not bind with commonly used mode (current smart key ID), easy seat access function moves forward to seat position before exiting the vehicle automatically.

WARNING

- Do not leave children alone in vehicle. Otherwise, they may be caught due to easy seat access function.
- When the binding function seat memory and smart key/easy seat access function turns on, make sure no one gets caught. Otherwise, move the seat adjustment button to stop operation of easy seat access function.

2-10. Seat Belts

Seat Belts

We strongly recommend the driver and passengers to wear their seat belts correctly at all times. Failure to do so could increase possibility and severity of injury in case of an accident. Check the seat belt regularly. If any seat belt function failure is found, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

Front seat belt is not buckled or not fastened firmly: When vehicle speed is < 25 km/h, red indicator "" in instrument cluster flashes; When vehicle speed is ⩾ 25 km/h, the red indicator "" in instrument cluster flashes, accompanied by sound alarm.

Note: Front passenger seat belt alarm is not standard. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

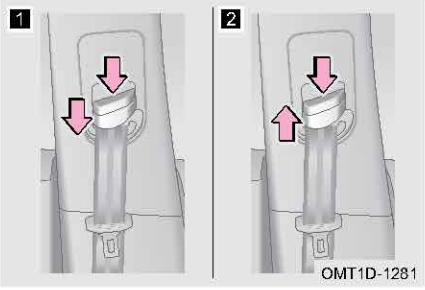
Second row seat belt is not buckled or not fastened firmly (if equipped): Red indicator "" in instrument cluster turns on; When vehicle speed is ⩾ 22 km/h, the buzzer sounds for 40 seconds.

Third row seat belt is not buckled or not fastened firmly (if equipped): Red indicator "" in instrument cluster turns on; When vehicle speed is ⩾ 22 km/h, the buzzer sounds for 40 seconds.

Note: For second row seat and third row seat, the corresponding red indicator turns on when the corresponding seat belt is not fastened, and turns off when the corresponding seat belt is fastened.

Using seat belt correctly

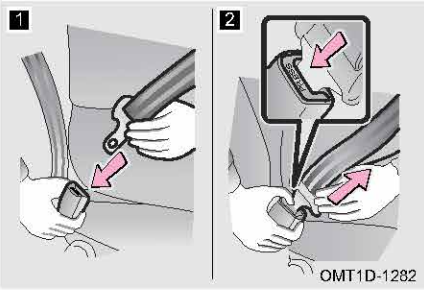
Step 1: Adjust the height of front seat belts;



1 Adjust downward: Push seat belt adjuster downward while pressing adjusting button.

2 Adjust upward: Push seat belt adjuster upward while pressing adjusting button.

Step 2: Fasten/release seat belt;



1 Fasten seat belt: Push the tab into the buckle until a "click" sound is heard.

2 Release seat belt: Press the release button to retract seat belt. If the belt cannot retract smoothly, pull it out and check for kinks or twists. Make sure that seat belt can retract smoothly.

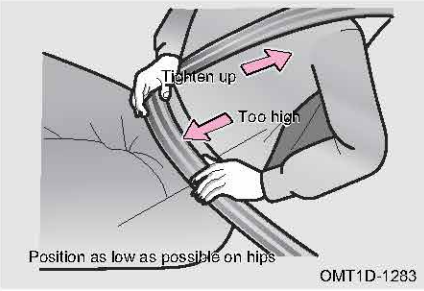
READ

- Each seat belt shall be used by one person only. Do not use a seat belt for more than one person at one time, including children.
- The seat belt will lock when it is pulled out quickly or the vehicle is on a slope, but it will not lock when pulling it out slowly.

CAUTION

- Make sure that seat belt buckle position is correct and is locked safely, otherwise it may cause personal injuries.
- Do not use any seat belt with a loose buckle, otherwise, the seat belt will not protect the passengers in the event of sudden braking or a collision.

Step 3: Adjust the position of seat belts.

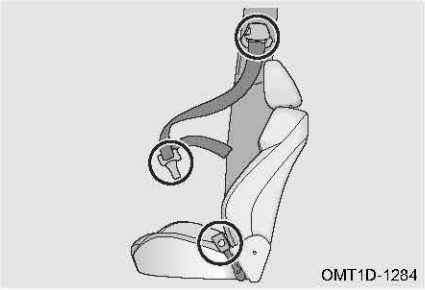


Adjust seatback angle, sit up straightly and well back in the seat. Position the lap belt as low as possible on your hips, not on your waist, then pull the shoulder portion upward so that it comes fully over the shoulder, but does not come into contact with the neck or slide off the shoulder.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not wear unfitted clothes while driving to prevent seat belt from contacting with your body closely, otherwise, best protection effect is not achieved.
- Both high-positioned lap belts and loose-fitting belts could cause death or serious injuries during a collision or other unintended events.
- Do not recline seat more than necessary to achieve a comfortable ride. Seat belts are most effective when passengers are sitting up straight and well back in their seats.
- Make sure the shoulder belt is positioned across your shoulder. Do not place the shoulder belt under your arm. The belt should be kept away from your neck, but not falling off your shoulder. Failure to do so could reduce the protection effect of seat belt in an accident.
- We recommend that children be seated in the second row seat. Choose to use seat belt or child restraint system with ISOFIX function according to the child's height. It is not recommended to use the seat belt to secure the child restraint system (unstable fixation may cause shaking). The seat belt cannot bind the child restraint system when the second row seat position is forward.

Maintaining seat belt



Check seat belts regularly for cuts, fraying, loose and stretched belt (-such as after a traffic accident). If the belt is damaged, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not allow water to penetrate belt retractor, buckle mechanism.
- Never use chemical detergent, boiling water, bleach or dye to wash the seat belt.
- The seat belt should be washed with mild cleanser or warm water and dry naturally. Never clean it by artificial heat.
- Do not try to repair or lubricate retractor or buckle mechanism of seat belt, or repair seat belt in any way, otherwise, the Chery Automobile Co., Ltd. will not be responsible for any problem caused thereby.

⚠ WARNING

- If your vehicle has been involved in a serious accident, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair, even if seat belt is not obviously damaged.
- Ensure that the belt can function properly and the belt is not twisted. If the seat belt does not function properly, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
- Do not attempt to install, remove, modify, disassemble or dispose of the seat belts. If there is any need above, have any necessary service carried out by Chery authorized service station.

Seat belt precautions

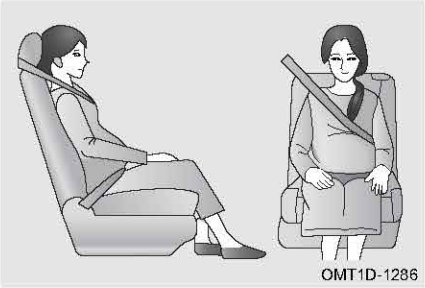
■ Precautions for using seat belt by a child

The seat belts of your vehicle are principally designed for persons of adult size. Use a child restraint system (for details, refer to "Child Restraint System" in this section) appropriate for the child, until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle seat belt. When the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle seat belt, follow the instructions regarding seat belt usage. If a child is too large to use a child restraint system, the child should sit in the second row seat and must be restrained using the vehicle seat belt.

Make sure the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from child's neck, but not falling off child's shoulder. Otherwise, the child may be seriously injured or even death during a collision or other unintended events.

Failure to use a child restraint system (for example: Let a child stand or kneel on seats; Let a child sit on an adult's laps; Holding a child in arms). This may cause death or serious injuries during a collision or other unintended events.

■ Precautions for using seat belt by a pregnant woman

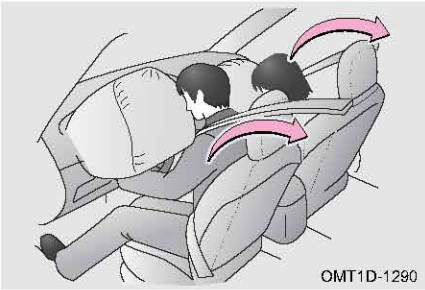


Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt properly. Women who are pregnant should position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips in the same manner as other occupants. Extend the shoulder belt completely over the shoulder and across the chest, avoid belt contact with the rounding of the abdominal area. If the seat belt is not worn properly, it may cause serious injuries or death during a collision or other unintended events.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not insert coins, clips, etc. into the buckle to prevent from properly latching tab and buckle.
- After inserting the tab, make sure that the tab and buckle are locked and that the lap and shoulder belt are not twisted.
- It is not allowed to insert the non-genuine seat belt tab into buckle. Long-term use will easily lead to damage of the seat belt buckle and make it unusable.
- If the seat belt does not function normally, it cannot protect passenger from death or serious injury, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

Seat Belt Pretensioner (If Equipped)



1. Seat belt pretensioner is designed to assist front airbag (SRS) in the event of a severe impact.
2. In the event of a minor impact or side impact, pretensioner may not activate.
3. During a severe impact, seat belt pretensioner may be activated even if there is no occupant in front seat.
4. When seat belt pretensioner is activated, retractor quickly tightens seat belt to tightly restrain occupant.
5. When seat belt pretensioner is activated, it may make a working sound and release a small amount of non-toxic gas. The gas produced does not cause a fire and is generally harmless.

⚠ WARNING

- When seat belt pretensioner is activated, the airbag (SRS) malfunction indicator will stay on, and seat belts cannot be retracted/pulled out. Please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
- Do not modify, remove, hit or open the seat belt pretensioner assembly, airbag (SRS) sensor and assembly wire. Otherwise, it may cause death or serious injuries during a collision or other unintended events.

Function limit

In the following cases, the seat belt pretensioner may not work properly:

1. Suspension system has been modified.
2. Body front structure has been modified.
3. Seat belt pretensioner or any assembly nearby has been repaired.
4. Seat belt pretensioner assembly or its surrounding area is damaged.
5. Grill guard or any other device has been installed to front body.

2-11. Child Restraint Systems

Child Restraint Systems

According to accident statistics, child sitting in the second row seat and properly restrained is safer than child in front seat. Choose a child restraint system suitable for the vehicle, age and size of the child. (Vehicle seat belt met international standards is designed according to body size of child over 1.5 m. If any under 1.5 m uses seat belt, the belt could hurt his/her neck seriously in case of an accident).

This instruction only provides installation instructions for child restraint systems (ISOFIX). For installation details, strictly follow the instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

⚠ WARNING

- Never fix child restraint system with seat belt only. Always use standard fixing device for child restraint system on the second row seat.
- Child restraint system should comply with the safety standards set by local regulations and laws. For any accident caused by using child restraint system, Chery Automobile Co., Ltd. will assume no responsibility.
- For effective protection in accidents and sudden stops, a child must be properly restrained using a seat belt or a appropriate child restraint system installed on the second row seat depending on age and size of the child. Holding a child in the arms cannot replace a child restraint system.

Grade for Child Restraint Systems

Child restraint system should comply with local motor vehicle standards for child restraint system and child safety prevention system (ECE R44), generally, the verified child restraint system is applied a local certification label and also has an orange label after testing by ECE R44 standard. There is information, such as mass group, ISOFIX level and license for child restraint system, on this label.

■ Child restraint systems are divided into the following weight groups:

Weight Groups	Child Weight
Group 0	0 to 10 kg
Group 0+	0 to 13 kg
Group 1	9 to 18 kg
Group 2	15 to 25 kg
Group 3	22 to 36 kg

1. Weight grade 0/0+: It is suitable to use group 0/0+ or group 0/1 for rearward-facing infant seat.
2. Weight grade 1: It is suitable to use group 1 or group 1/2 for child restraint systems with built-in seat belt system.
3. Weight grade 2/3: It is suitable to use group 2 for child restraint systems with back and group 3 for child restraint systems without back.

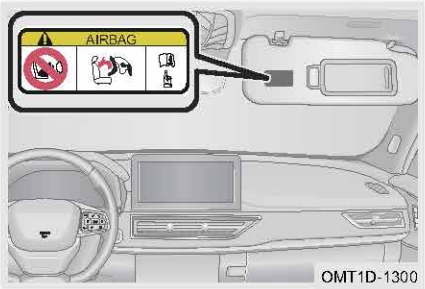
■ Application type for child restraint systems (Left-hand drive model):

Weight Groups	Front Passenger Seat	Second Row Outside Seat	Second Row Center Seat
Group 0 (0 to 10 kg)	X	U, L	X
Group 0+ (0 to 13 kg)	X	U, L	X
Group 1 (9 to 18 kg)	X	U, L	X
Group 2 (15 to 25 kg)	X	UF, L	X
Group 3 (22 to 36 kg)	X	UF, L	X

1. X: It is not suitable for installing any child restraint system in this weight grade.
2. U: It is suitable for child restraint systems of "universal" class obtained the relevant certification in this weight grade.
3. UF: It is suitable for forward-facing child restraint systems of "universal" class obtained the relevant certification in this weight grade.
4. L: It is suitable for child restraint systems of "semi-universal" class obtained the relevant certification if the vehicle is listed on the applicable model list of child restraint system manufacturer.

Note: Child restraint systems of "universal" class: It is installed with seat belt for adult; Child restraint systems of "semi-universal" class: It is installed by with ISOFIX fixing point and TOP TETHER upper fixing point.

Child Restraint System Precautions



This sticker is attached to front passenger sun visor and used to remind you that the vehicle is equipped with front airbag (SRS). Observe the following precautions:

1. Never install rearward-facing child restraint system in seat protected by front airbag (SRS) (active state).
2. Never change the design of child restraint system fixing device or seat belt on the vehicle under any circumstances.
3. Never fix child restraint system with seat belt only. Always use standard fixing device for child restraint system on the second row seat.

If you violate the above three precautions, the Chery Automobile Co., Ltd. will not be responsible for any problem caused thereby.

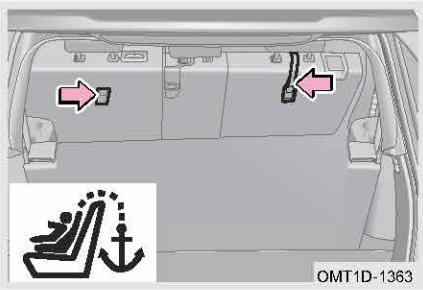
Recommended Child Restraint Systems

1. Please purchase and use child restraint systems approved by ECE R44. Orange ECE R44 certification sticker is generally attached on child restraint systems.
2. When using child restraint systems, please carefully read the instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer and strictly follow the installation instructions described in the instructions, confirm that child restraint system is installed firmly and steadily.
3. Child restraint systems recommended from the following table can be purchased and used.

Weight Groups	Manufacturer	Model
Group 0 (0 to 10 kg)	Maxi Cosi	Cabriofix + Family Fix
Group 0+ (0 to 13 kg)	Maxi Cosi	Cabriofix + Family Fix
Group 1 (9 to 18 kg)	Britax Römer	Britax DUO PLUS

TOP TETHER Upper Fixing Point

■ SUV and hatchback model



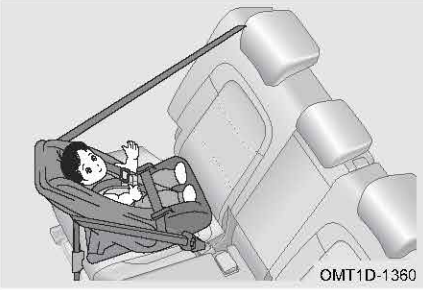
This model is equipped with specific upper fixing point (TOP TETHER) for forward-facing child restraint systems, and these upper fixing points are located on the back of rear seats.

Before using, remove head restraint where child restraint system should be installed, and then hang the hook on child restraint system into upper fixing point, be carefully to avoid strap on hook directly striding or bypassing head restraint, and head restraint and strap should not interfere with each other. Always fasten strap after hook is hung into upper fixing point. For details about fixing and fastening child restraint system upper strap, refer to instruction manual provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

⚠ WARNING

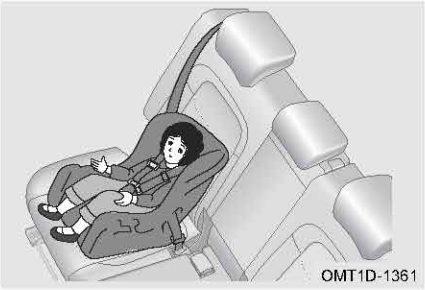
- Do not allow upper strap to stride or bypass head restraint and always fasten strap after installing, incorrect installation may cause serious injury to child.
- SUV and hatchback model: For vehicle with luggage cover on luggage compartment, remove luggage cover before child restraint system is fixed on fixing point.

■ Rearward-facing child restraint system



The Rearward-facing child restraint system should be installed facing direction opposite to that of vehicle traveling. In an accident, if an infant faces front windshield, it is likely to hurt his / her vulnerable central spine and spinal cord. Facing vehicle rear, infant's head, neck and torso can be protected by the seat. It is recommended for group 0: Up to 10 kg; Group 0+: Up to 13 kg.

■ Forward-facing child restraint system



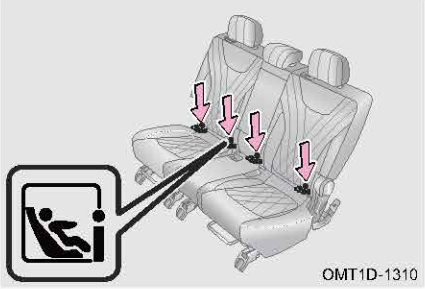
The forward-facing child restraint system should be installed facing vehicle traveling direction. It is recommended for group I: 9 - 18 kg.

■ Heightening child restraint system

For the expandability of child restraint system function, a separate booster cushion can be used. When the child is shorter and lighter, a booster cushion can be used to increase the child's line of sight in vehicle and secure child properly. (-Vehicle seat belt meeting international standards is designed according to body size of person over 1.5 m. If any one under 1.5 m uses seat belt, the belt could hurt his/her neck seriously in case of an accident). It is recommended for Group II: 15 to 25 kg; It is recommended for Group III: 22 to 36 kg.

Installing Child Restraint Systems

Child Restraint Systems



i-Size/ISOFIX fixing points are installation systems for child restraint systems based on ECE R14 and ECE R145 standards; i-Size/ISOFIX fixing points are located under the second row outside seat back; The fixing point position is usually near the mark “ ” or “ ” of lower part of seat back.

■ Size class for child restraint systems (ISOFIX):

Use a child restraint system with size class suitable for ISOFIX interface to help user choose the correct type of child restraint systems.

Size Class	Description
A	Full-size, forward-facing child restraint systems
B	Smaller size, forward-facing child restraint systems
B1	Smaller size, forward-facing child restraint systems
C	Full-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
D	Smaller size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
E	Rearward-facing infant seat
F	Left side transverse infant seat
G	Right side transverse infant seat

■ Application type for child restraint systems (ISOFIX):

Weight Groups	Size Class	Fixing Device	Front Passenger Seat	Second Row Outside Seat	Second Row Center Seat
Group 0 (Up to 10 kg)	F	ISO/L1	X	X	X
	G	ISO/L2	X	X	X
	E	ISO/R1	X	IL	X
Group 0+ (Up to 13 kg)	E	ISO/R1	X	IL	X
	D	ISO/R2	X	IL	X
	C	ISO/R3	X	IL	X
Group 1 (9 to 18 kg)	D	ISO/R2	X	IL	X
	C	ISO/R3	X	IL	X
	B	ISO/F2	X	IL, IUF	X
	B1	ISO/F2X	X	IL, IUF	X
	A	ISO/F3	X	IL, IUF	X
Group 2 (15 to 25 kg)		(1)			
Group 3 (22 to 36 kg)		(1)			

1. X: ISOFIX position is not suitable for the ISOFIX child restraint system of this weight group or this size classification.
2. IL: It is suitable for the ISOFIX child restraint system of special class in the list. These restraint systems may be special vehicle class, restricted class or semi-universal class.
3. IUF: It is suitable for the ISOFIX child restraint system of forward-facing universal class approved by this weight group.
4. (1): Child restraint system without ISO/XX size identification (A to G). For suitable weight groups, please check the model list of ISOFIX child restraint system.

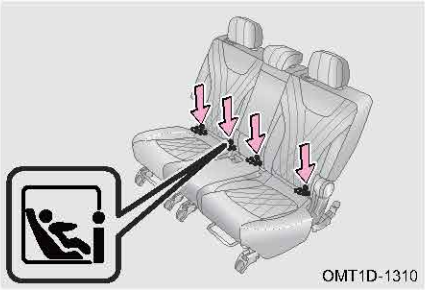
■ Application type for child restraint systems (i-Size):

Child Restraint System Types	Front Passenger Seat	Second Row Outside Seat	Second Row Center Seat
Child restraint systems (i-Size)	X	i-U	X

i-U: It is suitable for "universal" forward-facing and rearward-facing child restraint systems (i-Size).

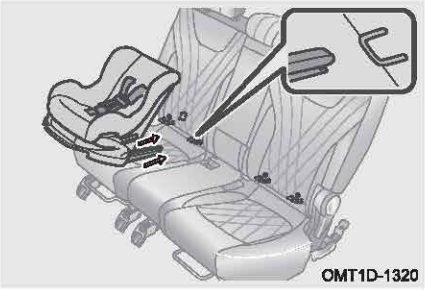
X: It is not suitable for "universal" child restraint systems.

Installing Child Restraint Systems

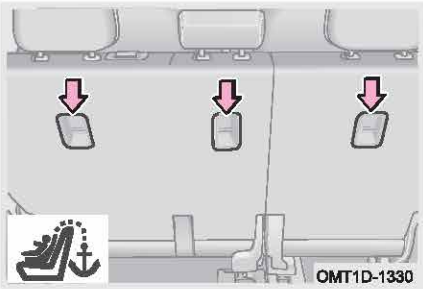


Step 1: Find the lower retaining ring used to secure child restraint system;

Step 2: Put child restraint system on the second row seat;



Step 3: Insert and secure lower hook of child restraint system to lower retaining ring;



Step 4: Pull out the child restraint system upper belt and secure it to upper fixing point (TOP TETHER) dedicated for forward-facing child restraint system (as shown in figure).

Note: Confirm if it needs to be secure to upper fixing point (TOP TETHER) according to the type of purchased child restraint system.

READ

- During installing child restraint system, if the upper part of child restraint system interferes with head restraint on which that seat, the head restraint can be removed.
- When child restraint system is installed on the second row seat, if front and back positions of the second row seat can be adjusted, adjust the second row seat to 40 mm away from the limiting position before installing the child restraint system.
- After the hook on upper strap is hung into the fixing point, be sure to tighten the strap and not loosen; For the specific method of fixing and tightening upper strap of child restraint system, strictly follow the instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.
- Please remove the head restraint where child restraint system needs to be installed before using, and then hang the hook on child restraint system into fixing point to avoid the strap of hook directly crossing the upper part of head restraint or passing the head restraint. The head restraint and strap should not interfere with each other.

⚠ WARNING

- After installing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- Child restraint system must be installed on the second row seat.
- Never fix more than one child restraint system on a set of retaining rings.
- Do not allow the upper strap to cross or pass the head restraint and be sure to tighten the strap after installing. Incorrect installation may cause serious injury to children.
- For the vehicle equipped with a luggage cover on the luggage compartment, the luggage cover must be removed before installing child restraint system to fixing point.
- If retaining ring device is damaged or overloaded during an accident, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
- If the driver' s seat interferes with the correct installation of the child restraint system, install the child restraint system on the right rear seat.
- Do not use child restraint system anchor bracket to secure items other than child restraint system. Otherwise, the Chery Automobile Co., Ltd. will not be responsible for any problem caused thereby.
- If the child restraint system is not correctly fixed in place, the child or passengers may be seriously injured or even death during a collision or other unintended events.
- Make sure the top strap is securely latched, and check if the child restraint system is secured by pushing and pulling it in different directions. Follow the installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer. If the child restraint system is not correctly installed, the child may be seriously injured or even death during a collision or other unintended events.
- If the child restraint system interferes with locking device of front seat, do not install child restraint system in the second row seat; The child and front passenger may be seriously injured or even death during a collision or other unintended events.
- Do not allow child to play with the child restraint system lock function belt. Avoid a belt twisting around a child' s neck, it may not be released, leading to chocking, other serious injuries or even death. If this occurs and the buckle cannot be released, scissors should be used to cut the belt.
- When the child restraint system is not in use, it should also be fixed properly on the seat; Do not place unfixed child restraint system in the passenger cabin.
- If it is necessary to remove child restraint system, take it out after removing or store it properly in luggage compartment. Otherwise, it may cause serious injuries during a collision or other unintended events.

Reminder for Children Staying in Rear Seat (If Equipped)

When the driver leaves vehicle and accidentally forgets the children in vehicle rear seat, the instrument cluster will remind driver to check rear seats while getting off the vehicle, when any of following two trigger conditions is met:

1. Before driving, rear door was opened after vehicle is powered on.
2. Before driving, rear door was opened within 10 min before vehicle is powered on and engine is started.

When any of above trigger conditions is met, after driving ends, the vehicle is stopped and the engine is turned off, the text reminder of "Check Rear Seats" will be displayed on instrument cluster and a prompt sound will be heard for 1 s.

INTERIOR FUNCTION

3-1. Key Information

Smart Key 107

Smart Key Battery 109

Effective Range 111

Keyless Entry 113

Vehicle Fortifying..... 114

Immobilizer System 115

Smart Key Vehicle Locating (If Equipped)..... 116

Remote Starting for Smart Key (If Equipped) 116

3-2. Doors

Door Lock Switch 117

Unlocking Doors with Inside Handle 117

Door Mechanical Switch.... 117

Child-Protection Lock..... 119

3-3. Windows

Power Windows 119

Window Remote Control Function 121

Window Jam Protection Function (If Equipped)..... 122

3-4. Panoramic Moon Roof (If Equipped)

Panoramic Moon Roof (-Type A)..... 124

Panoramic Moon Roof (-Type B)..... 125

Moon Roof Remote Control Function 126

Moon Roof Jam Protection Function 127

3-5. Audio System

Audio View..... 127

Audio Operation..... 130

Audio Setting..... 131

Audio Button..... 133

Voice Recognition Function (If Equipped)..... 133

Phone-link..... 134

3-6. Audio System (Dual Display)

Audio View..... 140

Audio Operation..... 142

Audio Setting..... 143

Audio Button..... 146

Voice Recognition Function (If Equipped)..... 147

Phone-link..... 148

3-7. Air Conditioning System

Electric Air Conditioning (If Equipped)..... 154

Automatic A/C (If Equipped) 155

Air Outlets Airflow Control 164

Refrigeration Function of Armrest Box on Auxiliary Fascia Console (If Equipped) 165

Automatic Defogging Function (If Equipped)..... 165

Blower Advancing Opening and Blower Delay Closing (If Equipped) 165

Air Conditioning Refrigeration Operation..... 166

Air Conditioning Heating Operation..... 169

3-8. Wireless Charging

Wireless Charging (If Equipped)..... 169

3-9. Storage Space

Storage Space..... 170

3-10. Power Outlet

Power Outlet 175

USB Port 176

3-11. Sun Visors and Vanity Mirrors

Sun Visors and Vanity Mirrors..... 177

3-12. Hood

Opening/closing the hood..... 178

3-13. Back Door

Manual Back Door..... 178

Power Back Door (If Equipped) 179

Back Door Emergency Opening..... 184

3-14. Fuel Tank Cap

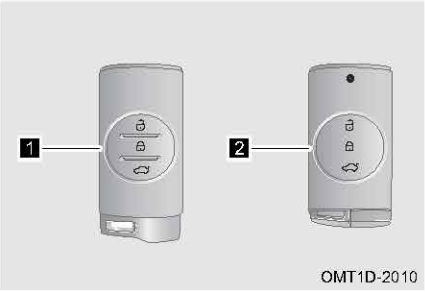
Fuel Tank Cap 184

3-1. Key Information

Smart Key

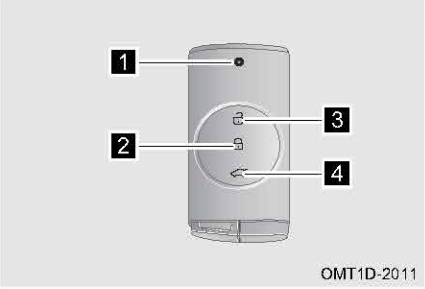
Smart key is used to unlock/lock doors remotely and open back door within about 20 m (no blind area) of the vehicle.

Smart key (type A)



1 Smart key (metal texture)

2 Smart key (plastic texture)

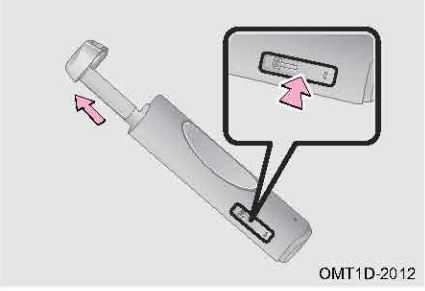


1 Indicator

2 Lock button

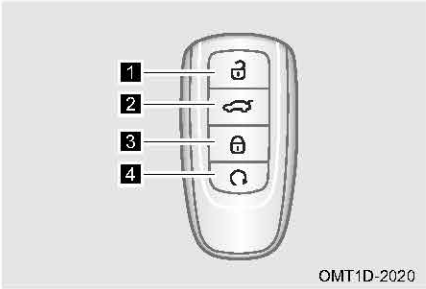
3 Unlock button

4 Back door opener button

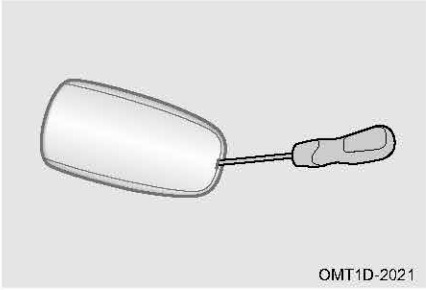


The mechanical key built into the smart key can be used to unlock/lock doors in emergency after pressing mechanical key release button and take out mechanical key. After using, return it to original place for easy-to-carry (for details, refer to "Door").

Smart key (type B)



1 Unlock button
2 Back door opener button
3 Lock button
4 Remote starting button



The mechanical key built into the smart key can be used to unlock/ lock doors in emergency after prying off smart key cover using a flathead screwdriver with the tip taped and take out mechanical key. After using, return it to original place for easy-to-carry (for details, refer to "Door").

Function limit

■ In the following conditions, the smart key may not work properly:

1. There are more than one smart keys being used nearby.
2. The distance between vehicle and smart key is over 20 m.
3. The smart key is in contact with, or is covered by a metallic object.
4. The smart key is placed near an electrical appliance (such as mobile phone, personal computer).
5. The key is near wireless communication devices that have the similar frequency with the remote control key (such as portable radio).
6. The key is near facilities that generate strong waves (such as TV tower, radio station, power station, airport, train station).

⚠ CAUTION

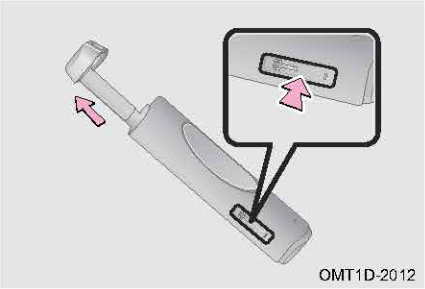
- This product is a low frequency radio device and can be disturbed by various radio services or radiation from industrial, scientific and medical applications.
- Do not change the transmission frequency, increase the transmitter power (including installation of the wireless RF power amplifier), or install an external or other transmitting antenna without permission.
- When using it, do not interfere with legal wireless communications; In case of interference, immediately stop using and take measures to eliminate the interference before continuing to use it.

■ Under the following conditions, the smart key battery may be low or depleted:

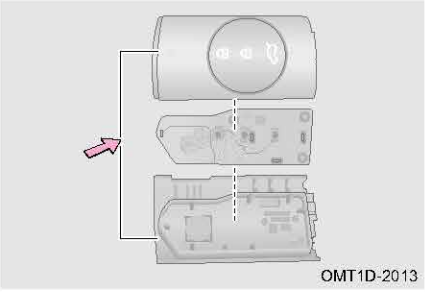
1. The remote control distance gradually decreases.
2. Remote control function does not work even without interference.
3. Instrument cluster prompts "Smart key battery power is low".

Smart Key Battery

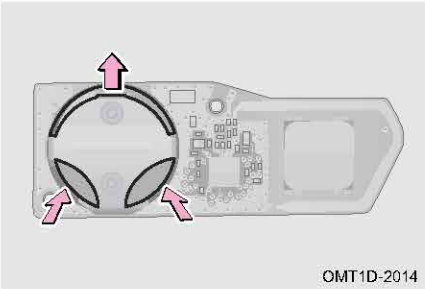
Replacing smart key battery (type A)



Step 1: Press release button and take out mechanical key;



Step 2: Pry off smart key cover using a flathead screwdriver with the tip taped, and then remove circuit board;

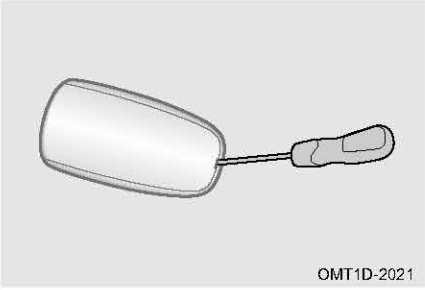


Step 3: Remove battery from circuit board and install a new one with positive (+) facing up;

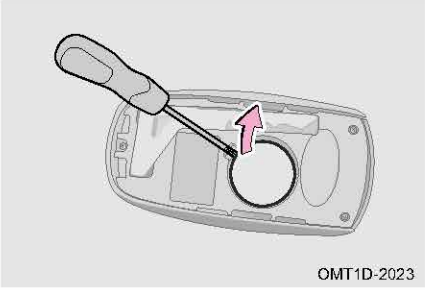
Step 4: Install smart key in place in the reverse order of removal;

Step 5: After replacing the battery, check if the smart key operates properly (press any smart key button to confirm that indicator comes on).

Replacing smart key battery (type B)



Step 1: Pry off smart key cover using a flathead screwdriver with the tip taped and take out mechanical key;



Step 2: Pry off battery in smart key using a flathead screwdriver with the tip taped and install new battery with the positive (+) side up;

Step 3: Install smart key in place in the reverse order of removal;

Step 4: After replacing the battery, check if the smart key operates properly. If the smart key cannot operate properly, please contact Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION
Used lithium battery cannot be handled as general household rubbish, please handle used battery according to the local regulations and provisions regarding environmental protection.

READ

- Make sure that positive and negative terminals of battery are placed correctly.
- Smart key battery model: 3V-CR2032 lithium battery.

CAUTION

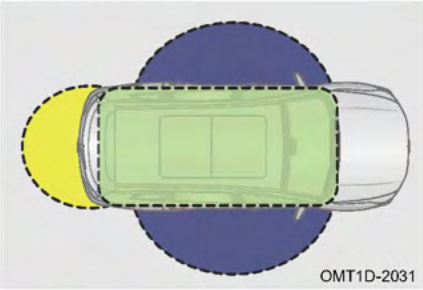
- Only use the battery type recommended by Chery.
- Do not bend electrode and terminal when installing battery.
- Make sure your hands are dry and away from water when replacing the battery.
- Do not touch new battery by oily hand. Failure to do so may cause battery corrosion.
- Do not touch or move any components inside the smart key, or its functions may not work properly.
- There are some difficulties when replacing key battery, so that, it may be damaged if replacing the battery by yourself. It is recommended that you replace it at Chery authorized service station.

WARNING

Take special care to prevent children from swallowing the removed battery or other components, otherwise it may cause death or serious injury to the children.

Effective Range

Detectable area



Starting or switching power area

Start or switch power mode when smart key is the vehicle.

Unlocking/locking area

Unlock/lock the doors when smart key is within effective range of door high performance low-frequency antenna.

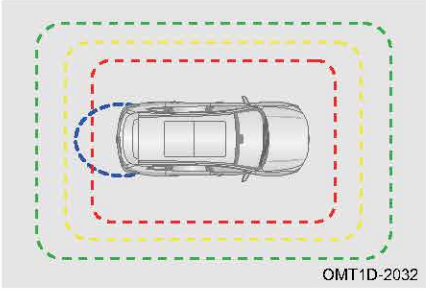
Opening back door area

Open the back door when smart key is within effective range of luggage compartment outer low-frequency antenna.

READ

Low-frequency antenna can detect areas within 1.5 m away from smart key. Therefore, when using keyless entry or ENGINE START STOP function, ensure that distance between the smart key and low-frequency antenna meets the requirement.

Automatically sensing area (if equipped)



Smart turning on courtesy lights area

Approach the vehicle when carrying smart key on your person, the courtesy lights will turn on.

Away from locking area

Leave the vehicle when carrying smart key on your person, doors automatically lock.

Approaching to unlocking area

Approach the vehicle when carrying smart key on your person, doors automatically unlock.

Smart opening back door area

Approach the vehicle when carrying smart key on your person, doors can not automatically unlock/lock (for details about back door sensing open function, refer to "Back Door").

READ

- Please leave the vehicle after the four doors and back door are closed, otherwise the automatic sensing lock function may not work properly.
- Due to the interference of surrounding environment, functions such as keyless entry, ENGINE START STOP, courtesy, approach unlocking, away locking etc. with carrying smart key may be affected. When the functions are abnormal, please change other methods (such as manual unlocking, remote unlocking) to unlock/lock or start the vehicle.

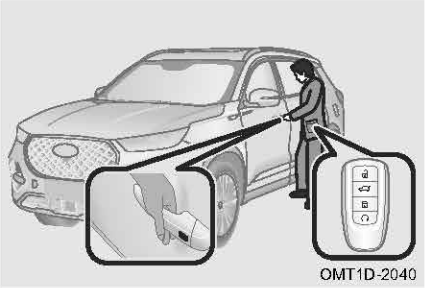
Function limit

■ Smart key may be not detected in the following conditions:

1. Smart key is in luggage compartment.
2. When locking doors, smart key is too close to the window or roof.
3. Check if the smart key is placed together with strong electromagnetic interference sources (such as: portable power source, interphone or other phones etc.).

Keyless Entry

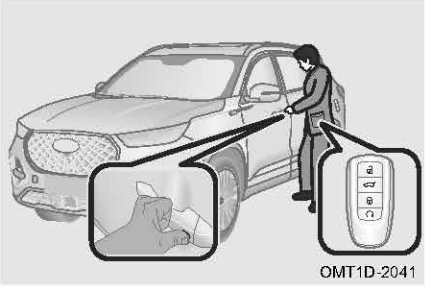
Unlocking doors



Method 1: Touch the unlock sensing area with four fingers when carrying smart key on your person, the system automatically recognizes validity of smart key and doors automatically unlock.

Method 2 (if equipped): Approach vehicle when carrying smart key, courtesy lights will turn on, the system automatically recognizes validity of smart key and doors automatically unlock.

Locking doors



Method 1: Touch the lock sensing area with fingers when carrying smart key on your person, the system automatically recognizes validity of smart key and doors automatically lock.

Method 2 (if equipped): Leave vehicle when carrying smart key, the system automatically recognizes validity of smart key and doors automatically lock.

READ

- Smart key sensing unlock/lock need to be set in audio system (for details, refer to "Audio System").
- Sensing unlock/lock function is closed after the vehicle is locked for 3 days, restart the engine will restore sensing unlock/lock function.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not put smart key together with computer, cordless mouse, phone, etc. doing so may not sense unlock/lock.
- Smart key sensing lock function is only operated when vehicle power is switched to OFF mode, all doors and back door are completely closed and smart key is not stored in vehicle.
- After leaving the vehicle and closing all doors and back door, smart key is left in vehicle or there is no smart key around vehicle within approximately 2.5 m, smart key sensing active lock function will not be activated.
- If the smart key away from vehicle over approximately 2.5 m, turn signal lights do not flash and horn sound is not heard (successful fortifying prompt), inspect if the vehicle is locked to avoid misoperation or unsatisfied condition, resulting in unlocking vehicle.
- After smart key sensing active unlock/lock function is activated, if smart key keeps near the vehicle, vehicle will lock automatically for more than 3 minutes, if the key still is in there for another 3 minutes, for the purpose of power saving, smart key sensing function will be temporarily closed, the function can only be activated after opening any door or back door and then closing all doors and back door.

Vehicle Fortifying

Fortifying operation

■ Fortifying mode

While vehicle power is switched to OFF mode as well as four doors, hood and back door are closed, press the smart key lock button or touch the lock sensing area with fingers or leave the vehicle when carrying smart key on your person, the door will automatically lock and enter the fortifying status.

Successful fortifying prompt: Turn signal light flashes once and anti-theft horn sounds once.

Unsuccessful fortifying prompt: Turn signal light flashes twice and anti-theft horn does not sound.

■ Secondary fortifying mode

After deactivating vehicle fortifying, if four doors, hood and back door are not operated, the vehicle will lock automatically and enter fortifying state after 30 seconds. If any of the four doors, hood and back door is opened, the vehicle will exit secondary fortifying mode.

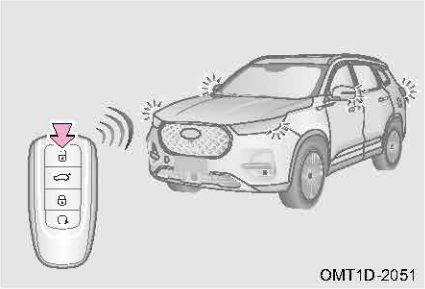
READ

Fortifying prompt is set in audio system (for details, refer to "Audio System").

CAUTION

- Vehicle fortifying cannot be set if vehicle power is not switched to OFF mode.
- If four doors are closed, hood or back door is not closed completely, the central lock will lock once and vehicle fortifying is not set successfully.
- If hood and back door are closed and any door is not closed, the central lock will lock and then unlock and vehicle fortifying is not set successfully.

Fortifying deactivation operation



Press unlock button on smart key or touch the unlock sensing area with four fingers or approach vehicle when carrying smart key on your person, the system automatically recognizes validity of smart key and doors automatically unlock, the vehicle will exit fortifying mode.

Successful deactivating prompt: Turn signal light flashes twice.

Immobilizer System

Engine immobilizer system

Smart key has a built-in transponder chip. If the smart key is not pre-matched into engine anti-theft module, the built-in chip will stop engine from starting.

■ In the following conditions, the engine immobilizer system may not work properly:

1. Smart key is in contact with a metallic object.
2. Do not modify or remove engine immobilizer system.
3. Smart key is too close to or contacts smart key (key with a built-in transponder chip) of another vehicle.

CAUTION

- Do not match the smart key by yourself, otherwise the engine immobilizer system may not work properly.
- If the engine fails to start, but the starter works normally, it may be due to the interference of engine immobilizer system, please contact Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

Vehicle anti-theft system

When vehicle is in fortifying mode and invalid entry is detected, the vehicle anti-theft system will send sound-light alarm, alerting owner that the vehicle is in an invalid opening state.

READ

- The vehicle anti-theft system will not be enabled if the doors are locked by mechanical key. It is recommended to lock doors by smart key.
- After locking doors by smart key, the vehicle anti-theft system will be triggered if front left door is unlocked and opened by mechanical key.
- When vehicle anti-theft system is triggered, vehicle anti-theft system can be deactivated if pressing unlock button on smart key or switching vehicle power to ON mode.
- To prevent unexpected triggering of vehicle anti-theft system or vehicle theft, before leaving the vehicle, check that nobody is in vehicle, all doors and windows are closed properly and fortified successfully.

Smart Key Vehicle Locating (If Equipped)

Press lock button on smart key continuously twice within several seconds, horn sounds 6 times, at the same time, turn signal lights flash 10 times, this allows you to find your vehicle easily.

Remote Starting for Smart Key (If Equipped)

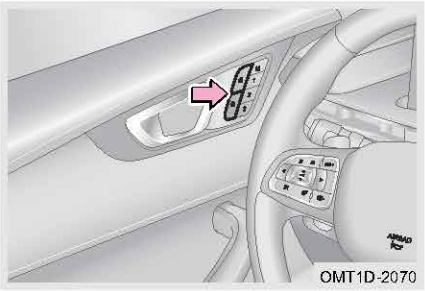
While vehicle power is switched to OFF mode, vehicle is locked and smart key is not in vehicle, press lock button or remote starting button on the smart key and hold for several seconds to start it remotely and A/C operates automatically at the same time. The vehicle will automatically shut off after 10 minutes of remote starting.

READ

- There must be no person in the vehicle including the operator when starting the vehicle remotely.
- Distance when starting vehicle remotely using smart key should not exceed normal operating distance (20 m) of smart key.
- After vehicle is started remotely, some functions cannot be operated (such as headlight combination switch, wiper combination switch, audio function), depress brake pedal when carrying smart key on your person, quit remote mode to restore normal operation.
- When single time for starting vehicle remotely is 10 minutes, the time will add 10 minutes after pressing lock button or remote starting button again for a few seconds; it allows vehicle starting remotely twice, if the two starting has been used, after vehicle power is turned to ON mode, vehicle starting remotely can be used.

3-2. Doors

Door Lock Switch



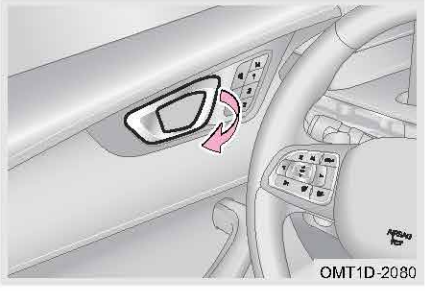
When doors are locked, press " 🔓 " switch to unlock doors.

When doors are unlocked, press " 🔒 " switch to lock doors.

READ

- The settings are different depending on the interior of the vehicle. Please refer to the actual vehicle.
- When four doors are closed and vehicle speed is > 15 km/h, the doors will automatically lock; Door automatic lock need to be set in audio system (for details, refer to "Audio System").

Unlocking Doors with Inside Handle



When doors are unlocked, pull door inside handle simply to open door.

When doors are locked, pull door inside handle for the first time to unlock the door, and pull it again to open the door.

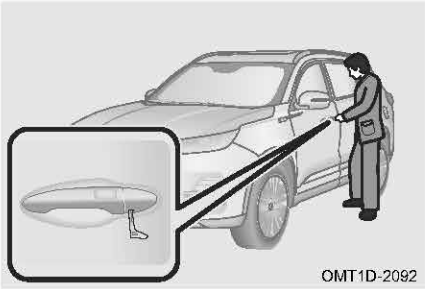
READ

The settings are different depending on the interior of the vehicle. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

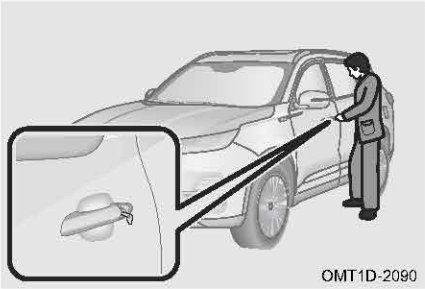
Door Mechanical Switch

Vehicle can not be unlocked/locked electrically when battery is depleted or under similar conditions. In this case, the doors can be unlocked/locked with door mechanical switch.

Unlocking/locking front left door manually

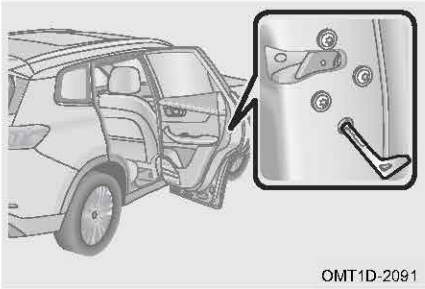


Step 1: Insert mechanical key into hole under front left door handle cover. Turn the key upwards to pry the cover;



Step 2: Insert the mechanical key into the front left door key hole, turn clockwise to lock the door, counterclockwise to unlock the door.

Locking front right door/rear doors manually



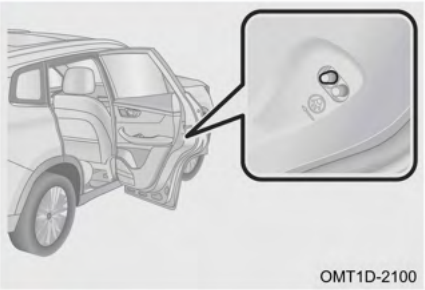
Step 1: Remove the rubber protective film from the door panel edge lock body; Press down the yellow lock knob with key tip, thus the locking operation on front right door/rear doors can be achieved;

Step 2: Attach the rubber protective film and close front right door/rear doors. Pull the door handle to make sure the doors are locked.

READ

- If the doors can not be unlocked/locked electrically, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- When using door mechanical switch, please check if the doors are locked successfully one by one after locking. If unsuccessful, please contact Chery authorized service station immediately.

Child-Protection Lock



The child-protection lock is located at inner side of rear doors.

Lock: Move the lock lever towards the arrow direction.

Unlock: Move the lock lever opposite to the arrow direction.

⚠ WARNING

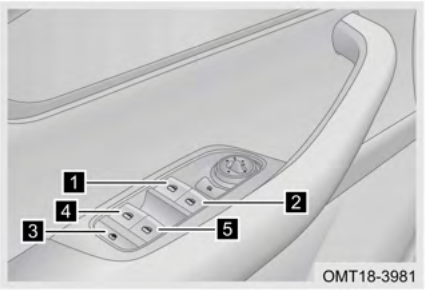
- The system is independent and can not replace the central lock mechanism in any case.
- Make sure that all doors are closed before driving, otherwise accidents and personal injury may occur.
- When a child is seated in vehicle rear seat, always lock child-protection locks to prevent rear door being opened accidentally while driving.
- After child-protection lock is locked, in case of a collision or other accidents, if there is someone in vehicle, remember that, rear door can only be opened from outside.
- In hot weather, if vehicle stalls and all doors and windows close, do not allow any animal or child in vehicle alone. Otherwise, even if it is a short time, it may cause serious injury even death due to sharp temperature rise.

3-3. Windows

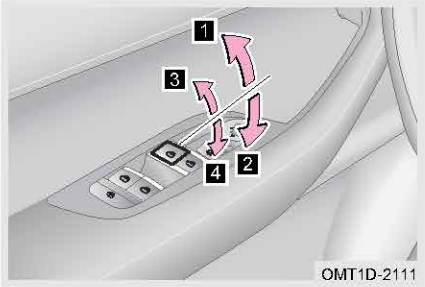
Power Windows

There are many ways to open/close windows, such as by window switch and voice recognition function.

Usage method



1. Front left power window switch
2. Front right power window switch
3. Passenger side window shielding switch
4. Rear left power window switch
5. Rear right power window switch



Operate power window switch after vehicle power is switched to ON mode:

1 Pull the switch to top, window will go up automatically; Press the switch again, window will stop moving.

2 Press the switch to bottom, window will go down automatically; Press the switch again, window will stop moving.

3 Pull the switch upwards by one level, window will go up; Release the switch, window will stop moving.

4 Press the switch downwards by one level, window will go down; Release the switch, window will stop moving.

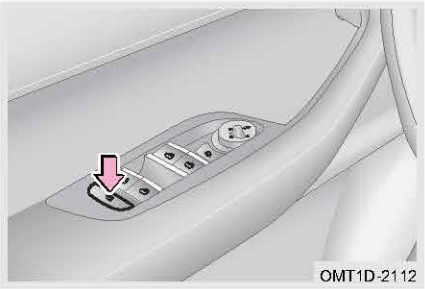
READ

- For details about voice recognition function, refer to "Audio System".
- Only vehicles with window jam protection function have one-touch window raising function.
- At the moment of starting engine, window up and down operation will be suspended to provide large current for engine starting.
- If the door is not opened within 2 minutes while vehicle power is switched to OFF mode, the power window can be operated.
- After leaving vehicle in low temperature environment for a long time, when operating power window switch, window glass cannot be fully opened or closed. In this case, release the switch and then press again, repeat 3 to 5 cycles to recover.

WARNING

- To avoid personal injury, it is driver' s responsibility to guide all passengers to operate power window up/down switch and prevent children using, meanwhile, it is recommended to ensure that vehicle power has been switched OFF mode or non-mechanical device is closed when leaving the vehicle.
- Take extra care to close windows, failure to do so may cause serious against injury! For models without window jam protection function, when window glass rises, passenger body may be caught, resulting in serious injury. For models with window jam protection function, jam protection function can be activated in jam protection area to protect passenger. However, for the thin or soft objects, jam protection function may be not activated, resulting in serious injury.

Passenger side window OFF switch



Press " " switch, passenger side window OFF switch indicator comes on, passenger side window switch will be disabled. After disabling, only window switches on driver side can be used to operate passenger side windows (this function is recommended when there is a child in vehicle). Press the switch again to cancel this function and the indicator goes off.

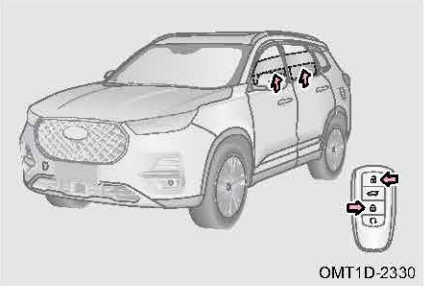
Window Remote Control Function

Window remote control down function

While vehicle power is switched to OFF mode, four doors are closed and unlock button on smart key is pressed and hold, windows of four doors will go down automatically. If unlock button on smart key is released or any door is opened in this process, window will stop going down.

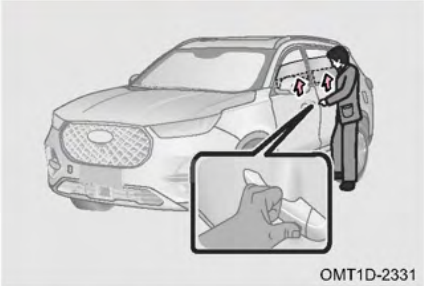
Window remote control up function (for models with jam protection function)

While vehicle power is switched to OFF mode, four doors are closed, press lock button on smart key or touch the lock sensing area with fingers (carry smart key on your person), the vehicle will enter fortifying status and the window glass of four doors will rise up automatically.



During window glass automatic rising, press the unlock/lock button again, and window glass stops rising.

After pressing unlock button, glass stops rising, if four doors and back door are not operated, the vehicle will lock automatically and enter fortifying state after 30 seconds.



During window glass automatic rising, touch lock sensing area with fingers (carry smart key on your person), and window glass stops rising.

After touching unlock sensing area with four fingers (carry smart key on your person), glass stops rising, if four doors and back door are not operated, the vehicle will lock automatically and enter fortifying state after 30 seconds.

READ

If abnormal closing occurs during remote control one-touch window up, turn signal lights flash 1 time and horn continuously sounds 5 times to alarm customer that window may not close normally.

WARNING

Before using remote control up window function, take extra care to see the vehicle clearly and make sure that passengers cannot be caught by window.

Window Jam Protection Function (If Equipped)

Jam protection function

During one-touch window up or remote control one-touch window up, if obstacle is encountered in jam protection area and resistance exceeds a certain value, window will stop rising and go down slightly. To close window, move away obstacle and operate again.

For protecting the window regulation system, window jam protection function and one-touch window up function will be canceled in some conditions to avoid potential safety hazard. At this time, the window only has the conventional up-down function. After jam protection learning, the one-touch window up function of corresponding door will return to normal.

Canceling jam protection function

If obstacle is encountered twice continuously when rising the window, the window will stop rising, jam protection function will be canceled. If the battery cable is disconnected during working or non-working process, jam protection function will be canceled.

Overheat protection function

For protecting motor, if operating window up-down continuously, overheat protection function actively disables the control of corresponding window

switch. After motor temperature returns to normal, it recovers. This function will not affect the use of other normal window up-down functions.

Manual learning function

If one-touch window up function and jam protection function do not operate normally, perform the following steps to restore function. Make sure that there are no obstacles within window range during learning.

Step 1: Switch vehicle power to ON mode;

Step 2: Operate window switch and hold for 2 seconds manually to fully close window, then release the switch;

Step 3: Operate window switch and hold for 2 seconds manually to fully open window, then release the switch;

Step 4: Try to operate auto window up function;

Step 5: If window cannot close automatically, please repeat the above steps to set.

If auto window up function cannot be restored after repeating the above steps, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

Note: If window position memory setting is lost, it can also be set with remote control one-touch window up function. At this time, window will go down to bottom, then go up to top. Window can be closed normally and setting is successful.

READ

When driving over roads with potholes or uneven surfaces, gravity may affect door system unexpectedly. In this case, window may reverse and go down while rising by one-touch window up function. This is a small probability event and normal.

CAUTION

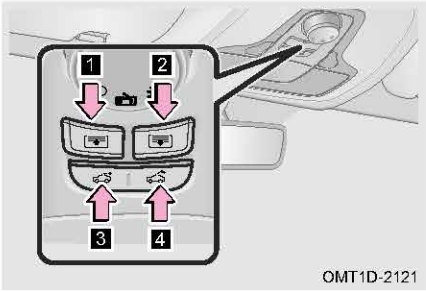
- If disconnecting battery cable and then reconnecting it, auto window up function and jam protection function will not work.
- Jam protection function is a kind of window safety protection function. Never try to active it repeatedly using various objects, in improper methods or even by intentionally pinching any part of your body. Falling to do so may damage window regulation system mechanism or injure personal accidentally.
- When closing window, even if it is equipped with jam protection function, always keep window close area is clear. Otherwise, if system encounters a thin object and cannot sense it, jam protection will not work. If someone’s hand or finger is caught, extremely serious injury will be caused.

3-4. Panoramic Moon Roof (If Equipped)

Panoramic Moon Roof (Type A)

There are many ways to open/close moon roof, such as by moon roof switch and voice recognition function.

Usage method



■ Opening/closing sunshade

1 Gently press " ⊼ " button to slide and open sunshade. Release the button, it stops moving. Firmly press " ⊼ " button to slide and open fully.

2 Gently press " ⊽ " button to slide and close sunshade. Release the button, it stops moving. Firmly press " ⊽ " button to slide and close fully.

■ Opening/closing moon roof

3 Gently press " ⇧ " button to slide and open moon roof. Release the button, it stops moving. Firmly press " ⇧ " button to slide and open fully.

4 Gently press " ⇩ " button to slide and close moon roof. Release the button, it stops moving. Firmly press " ⇩ " button to slide and close fully.

■ Tilting up/closing moon roof

3 When moon roof tilts up, gently press " ⇩ " button to close the moon roof.

4 When moon roof closes, gently press " ⇧ " button to tilt up the moon roof.

READ

- For details about voice recognition function, refer to "Audio System".
- When you find that there is a false jam protection, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- When moon roof is open, if turning off ENGINE START STOP switch, it will return automatically.

⚠ CAUTION

- The moon roof jam protection function fails, initial memory position may be lost, therefore, it is necessary to recalibrate position.
- When moon roof is frozen or covered with snow, forcibly opening moon roof will damage the moon roof glass and the motor.
- Regularly clean the dust and debris in moon roof rails and strips with water. After vehicle washing or raining, completely wipe the water on the moon roof glass before using.

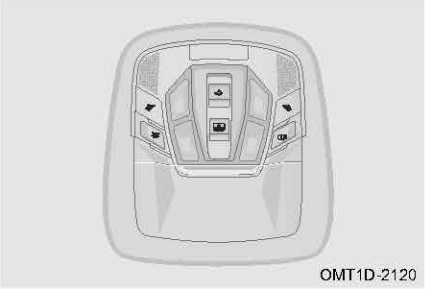
⚠ WARNING

Before closing moon roof, take extra care to see the vehicle clearly and make sure that passengers cannot be caught by moon roof.

Panoramic Moon Roof (Type B)

There are many ways to open/close moon roof, such as by moon roof switch and voice recognition function.

Usage method



■ Opening/closing sunshade

Push " " switch backward when sunshade is closed, sunshade will slide to middle position. Push " " switch again, sunshade will slide to fully open position.

Push " " switch forward when sunshade is fully open, sunshade will slide to middle position. Push " " switch again, sunshade will slide to fully close position.

■ Tilting up/closing moon roof

Push " " switch backward when moon roof is closed, the moon roof will tilt up.

Push " " switch forward when the moon roof is tilted up to close moon roof or directly push the " " switch forward to close the moon roof and sunshade at the same time.

■ Opening/closing moon roof

Push " " switch backward when the moon roof is tilted up, the moon roof will slide open. Push " " switch again, the moon roof will slide open to the maximum position.

When moon roof is open, push " " switch forward to close moon roof or directly push the " " switch forward to close the moon roof and sunshade at the same time.

READ

- For details about voice recognition function, refer to "Audio System".
- When you find that there is a false jam protection, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- Moon roof switch and sunshade switch are designed in 2 levels, first level: Manually control opening range; second level: Automatically control opening range, please select proper level according to your needs.

CAUTION

- The moon roof jam protection function fails, initial memory position may be lost, therefore, it is necessary to recalibrate position.
- When moon roof is frozen or covered with snow, forcibly opening moon roof will damage the moon roof glass and the motor.
- If there is water on moon roof after raining, to prevent water from flowing into cab when opening moon roof, always wipe off water or tilt moon roof up to remove these water before opening it.
- Regularly clean the dust and debris in moon roof rails and strips with water. After vehicle washing or raining, completely wipe the water on the moon roof glass before using.

WARNING

Before closing moon roof, take extra care to see the vehicle clearly and make sure that passengers cannot be caught by moon roof.

Moon Roof Remote Control Function

Moon roof remote control open function

While vehicle power is switched to OFF mode, four doors are closed and unlock button on smart key is pressed and hold for a few seconds, sunshade is opened and then moon roof is opened; Press the lock button or touch the lock sensing area with fingers when carrying smart key on your person during opening moon roof, moon roof stops moving.

Moon roof remote control close function

While vehicle power is switched to OFF mode, four doors are closed and unlock button on smart key is pressed, the vehicle will enter fortifying status and moon roof is closed; Press the lock button or touch the lock sensing area with fingers when carrying smart key on your person during closing moon roof, moon roof stops moving.

Moon Roof Jam Protection Function

Jam protection function

During moon roof glass is closed, it will automatically return under certain resistance. When jam protection occurs in horizontal position, the moon roof glass will return to half open position. When jam protection occurs in vertical position, it will return to tilt up position.

When sunshade runs from half open state to the closed state, it will automatically return under certain resistance.

⚠ WARNING
Do not pass body parts or objects through moon roof during opening and closing, even if it is equipped with jam protection function.

Overheat protection function

Do not operate the moon roof frequently in a short time, otherwise the motor will overheat or enter the overheat protection state of the motor. After that, the moon roof will not respond to key action. The overheat protection will be automatically canceled after the motor is cooled.

3-5. Audio System

Audio View

Audio view (type A)

1 Multimedia

Click to enter multimedia screen, including radio/DAB radio (if equipped), music, pictures and video.

2 Telephone

Click to enter Bluetooth phone, including recent calls, dialing, contacts and Bluetooth settings.

3 Cloudrive

Click to enter Cloudrive screen, including each application menu in system.

4 A/C menu quick button

Air conditioning system operation screen can be quickly entered by sliding down the A/C menu quick button.

5 Power button

Turn on/off audio and entertainment system, and restart system by long pressing power button during abnormal operation.

6 Volume - button

Click to decrease the volume.

7 Volume + button

Click to increase the volume.

8 Hazard light switch

Click to turn on the hazard light.

9 Audio main menu button

Click to change to main menu screen.

10 Cloudrive interconnection button

Click to change to Cloudrive Interconnection screen.

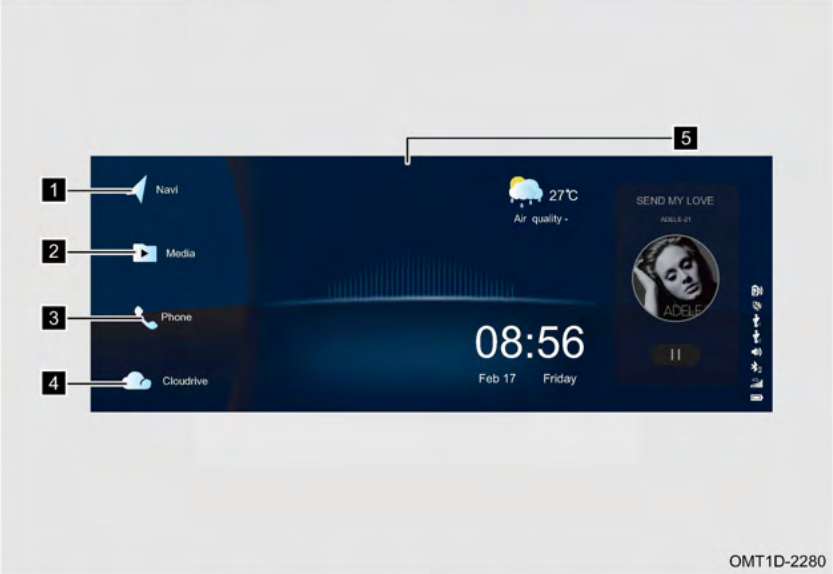
11 Answer button

Click to answer the call.

12 Setting button (SET)

Click to enter setting screen, including the settings for each function.

Audio view (type B)



1 Navigation (if equipped)

Click to enter on-board navigation function.

2 Media

Click to enter media screen, including radio/DAB radio (if equipped), music, images and video.

3 Phone

Click to enter Bluetooth phone, including recent calls, dialing, contacts and Bluetooth settings.

4 Cloudrive

Click to enter Cloudrive screen, including each application menu in system.

5 A/C menu quick button

A/C system operation screen can be quickly entered by sliding the A/C menu quick button.

Vehicle setting button

Click to enter vehicle setting.

Power button/volume adjustment knob

Turn on/off the audio and entertainment system. In case of abnormal operation, the system can be restarted by long pressing the power button. Turn it clockwise to increase the volume, turn it counterclockwise to decrease the volume.

Note: Vehicle setting button and power button/volume adjustment knob are on auxiliary fascia console.

Audio Operation

Navigation (if equipped)

OMT1D-2281

Click the navigation button on main menu or navigation button on audio control panel to enter the on-board navigation function.

"User Notice" screen will be displayed after navigation is turned on. Select the touch button " ☑ " to cancel the reminder afterwards. On-board navigation screen can be entered after clicking [Agree].

Media

OMT1D-2282

Media includes radio, music, pictures and videos.

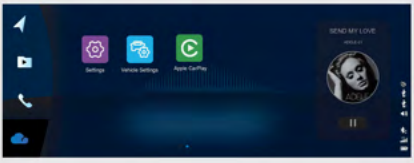
Bluetooth phone

OMT1D-2283

Click the phone button on main menu to enter phone screen.

To use Bluetooth phone function, connect the cellphone Bluetooth to vehicle first.

Cloudrive



OMT1D-2284

Cloudrive includes settings, vehicle settings and other applications.

Electronic user manual

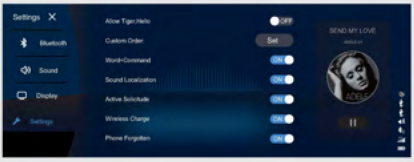
OMT1D-2285

Click the Cloudrive button on main menu to enter Cloudrive screen.

Click USER MANUAL application on Cloudrive screen to check the detailed operating instructions of the audio head unit system.

Audio Setting

Setting



OMT1D-2286

[Bluetooth]: Click to enter Bluetooth setting screen to set Bluetooth connection.

[Sound]: Click to enter sound setting screen to set button tone, loudness, incoming broadcast, default volume, voice broadcast, vehicle speed volume, Arkamys sound effect, sound field setting, sound effect setting, volume adjustment and reset default.

[Display]: Click to enter display setting screen to set screen switch, video limit switch, screen brightness setting, wallpaper setting, theme setting and reset default.

[System Setting]: Click to enter system setting screen to set wake-up + command, custom wake-up words, automatic care, wireless charging, mobile phone forgetting reminder, sound source location mode, MODE button definition, radio area setting, phone-link setting, version information, storage space, and reset default settings.

Vehicle setting

OMT1D-2287

[Intelligent Key]: Click to enter intelligent key screen to set courtesy lights, intelligent key sensing back door opening, smart key sensing unlock and lock, easy seat access function for driver seat, rear view mirror automatic adjustment on reversing, position memory linked with key.

[Meter Setting]: Click to enter the meter setting screen to set overspeed alarm, meter backlight and meter time.

[Light Setting]: Click to enter the light setting screen to set daytime running light, intelligent high beam assist, headlight delay and atmosphere light.

[A/C Setting]: Click to enter the A/C setting screen to set blower advancing opening, blower delay closing, automatic defog function.

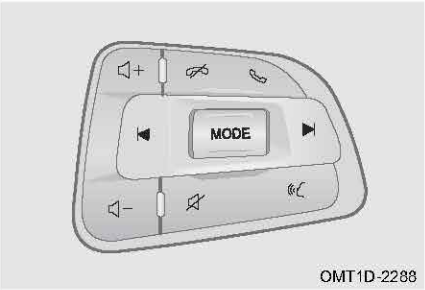
[Auxiliary Drive Setting]: Click to enter the auxiliary drive setting screen to set blind area monitoring, distance warning system, speed limit assistance, door opening warning, lane departure warning, automatic emergency braking system, traffic congestion assistance system/integrated cruise assistance system and rear approach warning switch.

[Vehicle Basic Setting]: Click to enter the vehicle basic setting screen to set automatic locking, outside mirror auto folding, fortifying prompt, language, back door opening degree and EPS steering mode.

READ

- The settings are different depending on the configuration of the vehicle. Please refer to the actual vehicle.
- Enter to vehicle setting after switching ENGINE START STOP switch to ON mode.
- The setting of atmosphere light can display different colors of atmosphere light according to the sound effect or the switching of driving mode.

Audio Button



Increase volume button " ◁+ ":

Short press: Increase volume;

Long press: Increase volume continuously.

Decrease volume button " ◁− ":

Short press: Decrease volume;

Long press: Decrease volume continuously.

Answer button " 📞 ": Answer the call or enter Bluetooth screen.

Hang up button " ☎ ": Hang up the call.

Voice recognition button " 🗣 ": Short press to wake up the voice recognition function; Long press to wake up the Siri function (need to be connected with phone).

Audio mute button " 🔇 ": Mute the audio.

Mode switch button " MODE ": Switch the mode: Radio (if equipped) - USB - Bluetooth music - local store music - Radio (if equipped).

Switch button "⏮ ⏭" to left and right:

Music: Previous/next switch;

Radio: previous/next station.

READ
The settings are different depending on the buttons of vehicle. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

Voice Recognition Function (If Equipped)

Voice recognition function can be enabled using the following methods when audio head unit is turned on:

Method 1: Directly say "Hello, Xiaohu" to enable the voice recognition function.

Method 2: Short press the voice recognition button " 🗣 " on steering wheel to enable the voice recognition function.

Phone-link

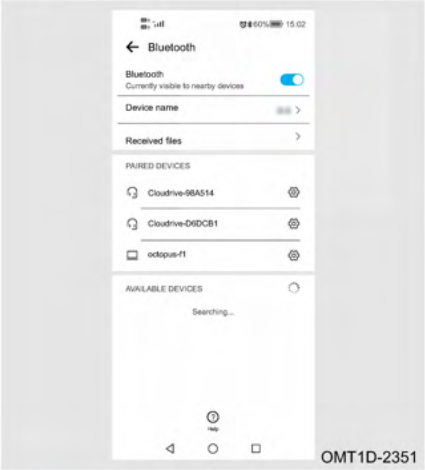
QDlink (Android)

■ Download method

QDLink App is downloaded to your phone by any of the following methods:

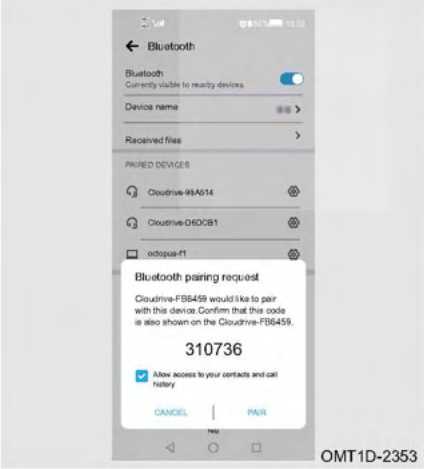
1. Scan the QDLink QR code to download.
2. Scan the Google QR code to download.
3. Search and download in Google Play.

■ Connecting method



Step 1: Turn Bluetooth to ON on Settings (Bluetooth) screen of phone;

Step 2: Turn Bluetooth to ON on Settings (Bluetooth) screen of audio, search and connect device, and Bluetooth pairing request will be popped up on phone;

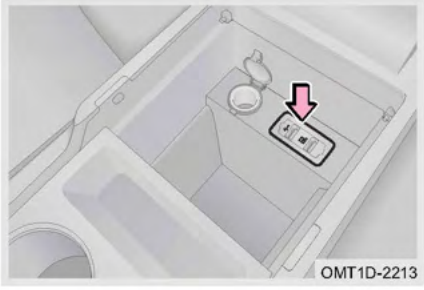


OMT1D-2353

Step 3: Select PAIR on Bluetooth pairing request screen of phone to complete the Bluetooth pairing operation;

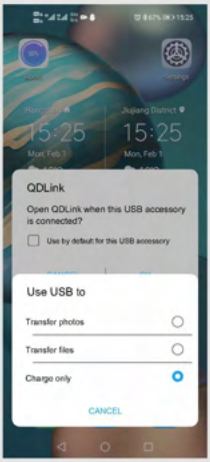
OMT1D-2356

Step 4: Click the QDLink application;


OMT1D-2213

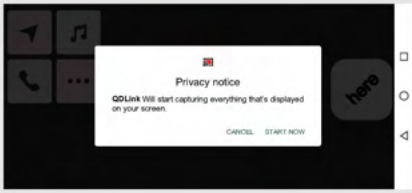
Step 5: Connect USB port and phone using original data cable, and USB permission request will be popped up on phone;

Note: Only USB port " " supports QDlink screencast function. Before phone-link, please turn on the developer permissions in the phone settings.



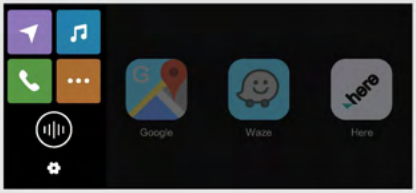
OMT1D-2355

Step 6: Select Transfer files on USB permission request screen, turn QDLink to ON when connecting USB is agreed, and screencast request screen will be popped up on phone;



OMT1D-2357

Step 7: Select START NOW on screencast request screen of phone;



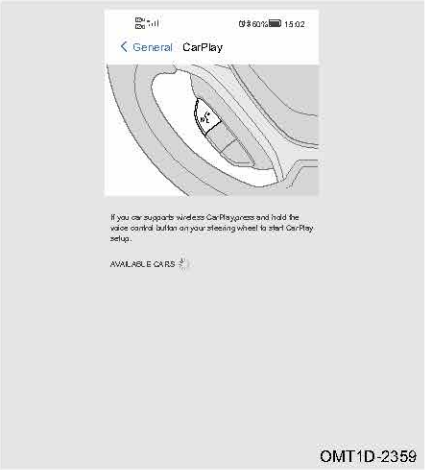
OMT1D-2358

Step 8: Enter QDlink screencast screen.

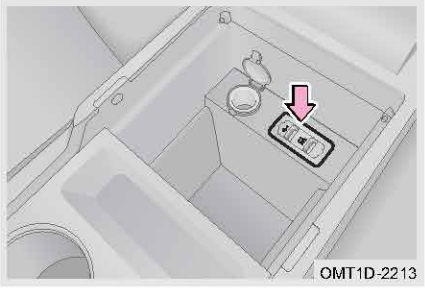
Apple CarPlay (iOS)

■Connecting method

Step 1: Turn Listen for "Hey Siri" and Press Home for Siri to ON on Settings (Siri&search) screen of phone;

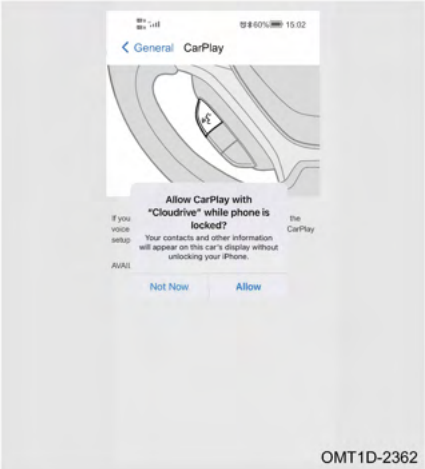


Step 2: Turn CarPlay to ON on Settings (General) screen of phone;



Step 3: Connect USB port and phone using original data cable;

Note: Only USB port " " supports Apple CarPlay screencast function.



OMT1D-2362

Step 4: Select Allow on CarPlay permission request screen;

OMT1D-2361

Step 5: Enter Apple CarPlay screencast screen.

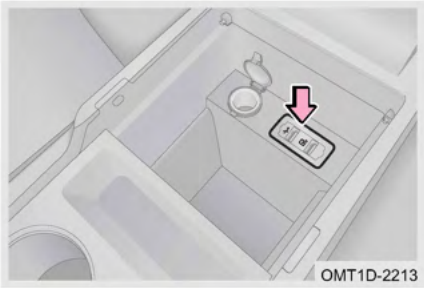
Android Auto (Android)

■Connecting method

OMM1D-2303

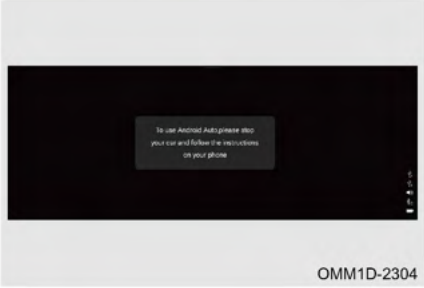
Step 1: Install the Google Framework;

Step 2: Perform the installation in Google Play and run Android Auto, install all supporting softwares according to the system prompt and update the existing program, and then Android Auto can run normal after completing the update.

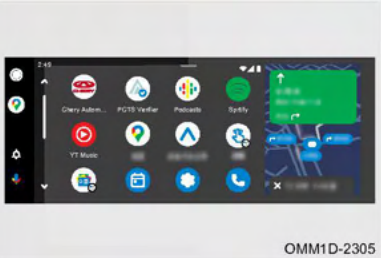

OMT1D-2213

Step 3: Connect USB port and phone using original data cable;

Note: Only USB port " " supports Android Auto screencast function. Before phone-link, please turn on the developer permissions in the phone settings.


OMM1D-2304

Step 4: If this phone is connected to the vehicle for the first time (a prompt will pop up on the head unit, please operate according to the prompt on the mobile phone, stop the vehicle and pull the parking brake), then the first connection setting can be completed;



Step 5: Click "Android Auto" on the head unit APP to enter "Android Auto" mapping interface.

3-6. Audio System (Dual Display)

Audio View

Audio home page button

Click to back to audio main screen.

Application button

Click to enter application center.

Navi button

Click to enter navigation.

Multimedia button

Click to enter multimedia.

Setting button

Click to enter local setting.

Answer button

Click to answer the call or enter phone screen.

Capture button

Click the driving recorder to capture.

Cloudrive interconnection button

Click to phone-link.

Note: Slide the audio system main screen to the right to display the quick menu; the answer button and the capture button are not standard, please refer to the actual vehicle configuration.

Vehicle setting button

Click to enter vehicle setting.

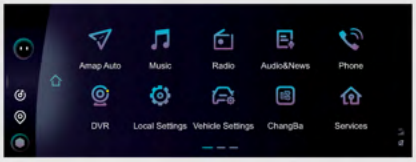
Power button/volume adjustment knob

Turn on/off the audio and entertainment system. In case of abnormal operation, the system can be restarted by long pressing the power button. Turn it clockwise to increase the volume, turn it counterclockwise to decrease the volume.

Note: Vehicle setting button and power button/volume adjustment knob are located on the auxiliary fascia console.

Audio Operation

APP application



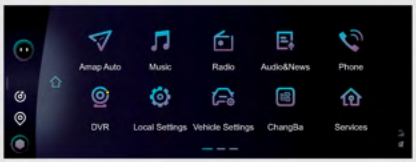
OMT1D-2378

Method 1: Click audio control panel " " button to enter APP application screen.

Method 2: Click audio head unit " " button to enter APP application screen.

APP application screen includes Amap, music, radio station, audio news, phone, driving recorder, local setting, vehicle setting, Changba, life service, weather, electronic manual, Lion fast App, My center, etc.

Bluetooth phone



OMT1D-2378

Local setting - Bluetooth, connect phone Bluetooth to audio head unit first, then click phone on APP application screen to enter Bluetooth phone screen.

Navigation

■ Enter Navigation (if equipped)

Method 1: Click audio control panel " " button to enter navigation screen.

Method 2: Click audio head unit " " button to enter navigation screen.

Method 3: Click Amap on APP application screen to enter navigation screen.

■ Enter AR navigation (if equipped)

OMT1D-2379

Click audio head unit " " button on avigation screen to enter AR navigation screen.

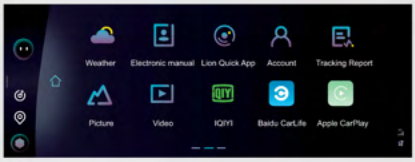
Audio projecting (if equipped)

OMT1D-2380

On the screen of navigation, AR navigation, music, local music, and radio station, slide the screen to the left with two fingers, and the related screen will be projected to instrument cluster to display.

Note: AR navigation can only be displayed on audio system or instrument cluster at the same time. It does not support simultaneous display on the audio system and instrument cluster.

Electronic manual

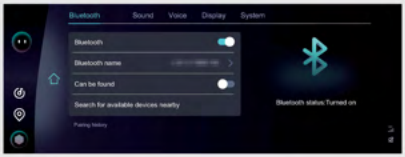


OMT1D-2381

Click electronic manual on APP application screen to check the detailed operating instructions of the audio system.

Audio Setting

Local setting

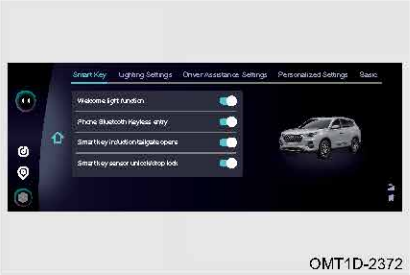


OMT1D-2371

Bluetooth, sound, voice, display and system setting can be set on local setting.

Vehicle setting

■ Smart key



OMT1D-2372

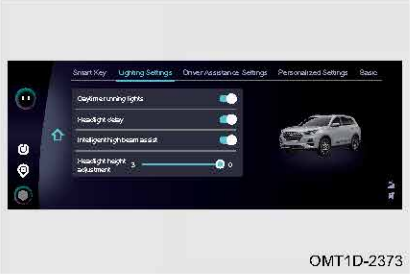
Courtesy light function: ON/OFF.

Keyless entry for phone Bluetooth: ON/OFF.

Smart key sensing back door: ON/OFF.

Smart key sensing unlock and lock: ON/OFF.

■ Light setting



OMT1D-2373

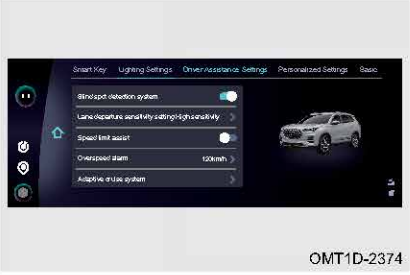
Daytime running light: ON/OFF.

Headlight delay: ON/OFF.

Intelligent high beam assist: ON/OFF.

Headlight leveling adjustment: Set the leveling of headlight.

■ Driving assist setting



OMT1D-2374

Door open warning: ON/OFF.

Rear collision warning system: ON/OFF.

Blind spot detection: ON/OFF.

Lane departure sensitivity setting: Set low sensitivity/high sensitivity.

Speed limit assist: ON/OFF.

Over speed alarm: Set speed limit value within 30 km/h - 130 km/h.

Adaptive cruise control system: Set standard clearance/maximum clearance/minimum clearance/previous selected clearance.

Fatigue driving reminder: Set reminder opening time within 1 - 4 hours.

Automatic emergency braking system: ON/OFF.

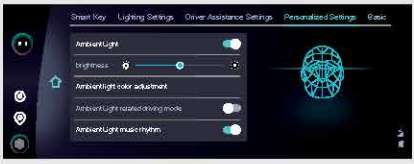
Front collision warning system: Set OFF/far/standard/near.

Distance warning system: ON/OFF.

Steering force mode linked with driving mode: ON/OFF.

Steering force mode: Set comfort/sport.

■ Personalized setting



OMT1D-2375

Ambient light: ON/OFF.

Ambient light brightness: Set brightness of ambient light.

Ambient light color adjustment: Set color of ambient light.

Ambient light linked with driving mode: ON/OFF.

Music rhythm for ambient light : ON/OFF.

Seat memory bounded with face recognition: ON/OFF.

Seat/rear view mirror position: Select or store seat/rear view mirror memory position.

■ Vehicle basic information

OMT1D-2376

Auto lock: ON/OFF.

Fortifying prompt: Set light and horn/light/horn.

Meter backlight level: Set backlight brightness of meter.

Outside rear view mirror auto folding: ON/OFF.

Rear view mirror auto adjustment while reversing: Set to only left/only right/both sides at the same time/off.

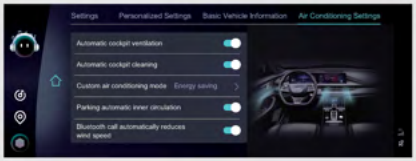
Easy seat access/exit: ON/OFF.

Back door opening height setting: Set opening height of back door.

Phone wireless charging setting: ON/OFF.

Phone forgetting reminder setting: ON/OFF.

■ A/C setting (if equipped)



OMT1D-2377

Automatic defogging: ON/OFF.

Auto ventilation in parking: ON/OFF.

Cabin automatic cleaning: ON/OFF.

Custom A/C mode: Set to energy saving/comfort/strong.

Auto recirculating in parking: ON/OFF.

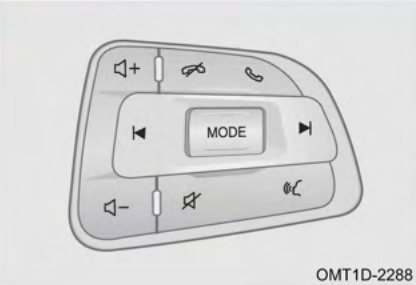
Air speed auto down for Bluetooth calling: ON/OFF.

Air purification auto operation: ON/OFF.

READ

The setting items are different depending on the configuration of the vehicle. Please refer to the actual vehicle setting.

Audio Button



OMT1D-2288

Increase volume button " ◁+ " : Short press to increase volume; Long press to increase volume continuously.

Decrease volume button " ◁− " : Short press to decrease volume; Long press to decrease volume continuously.

Answer button " 📞 " : Answer the call or enter Bluetooth setting screen.

Hang up button " ☎ " : Hang up the call.

Voice recognition button " 🗣 " : Short press to wake up the voice recognition function; Long press to wake up the Siri function (It is necessary to connect with phone-link).

Audio mute button " 🔇 " : Mute the audio.

Mode switch button " MODE " : Perform mode switch (audio - radio - USB - Bluetooth music - local store music - audio).

Switch button " ⏮ ⏭ " to left and right: Switch previous/next track in music; Switch previous/next station in radio.

Voice Recognition Function (If Equipped)

The voice recognition function can voice control navigation, phone, window, moon roof , air conditioning, seat heating, seat ventilation, etc. to make you can have a better experience while driving.

Voice recognition function can be enabled using the following methods when audio head unit is turned on:

Method 1: Directly say “Hello, Xiaohu” or “Hello, Xiaoqi” to enable the voice recognition function.

Method 2: Short press the voice recognition button “ ” on steering wheel to enable the voice recognition function.

Method 3: Click Xiaohu “ ” on audio screen twice to enable voice recognition function, and click Xiaohu “ ” again to exit voice wake-up function.

Phone-link

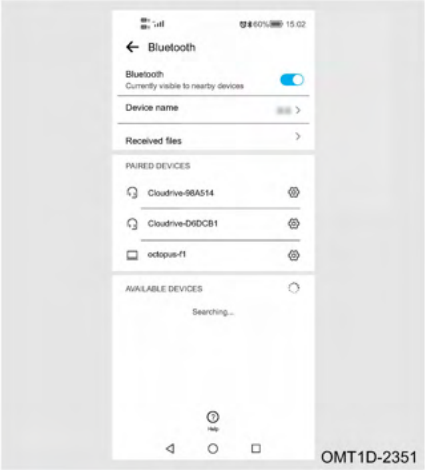
QDlink (Android)

■ Download method

QDLink App is downloaded to your phone by any of the following methods:

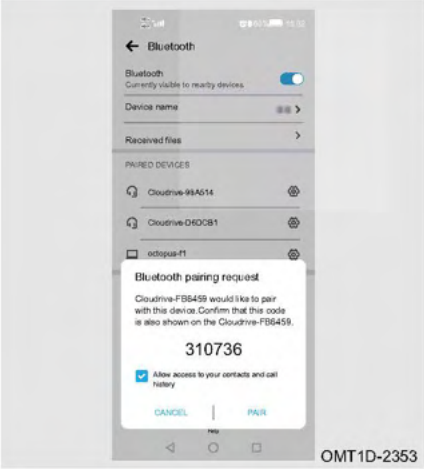
1. Scan the QDLink QR code to download.
2. Scan the Google QR code to download.
3. Search and download in Google Play.

■ Connecting method



Step 1: Turn Bluetooth to ON on Settings (Bluetooth) screen of phone;

Step 2: Turn Bluetooth to ON on Settings (Bluetooth) screen of audio, search and connect device, and Bluetooth pairing request will be popped up on phone;

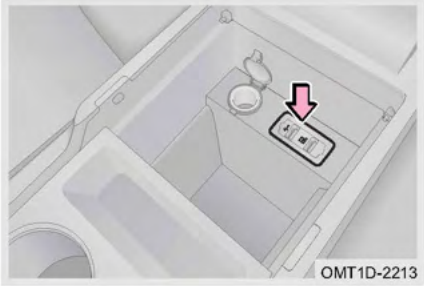


OMT1D-2353

Step 3: Select PAIR on Bluetooth pairing request screen of phone to complete the Bluetooth pairing operation;

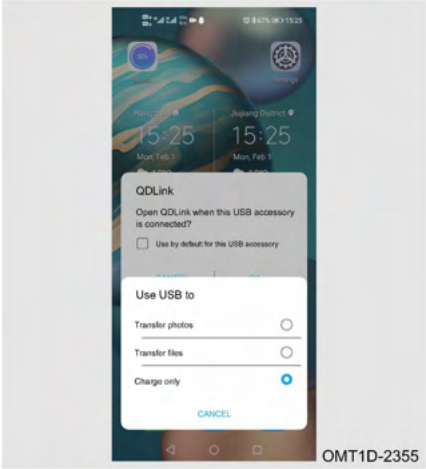
OMT1D-2356

Step 4: Click the QDLink application;


OMT1D-2213

Step 5: Connect USB port and phone using original data cable, and USB permission request will be popped up on phone;

Note: Only USB port " " supports QDlink screencast function. Before phone-link, please turn on the developer permissions in the phone settings.

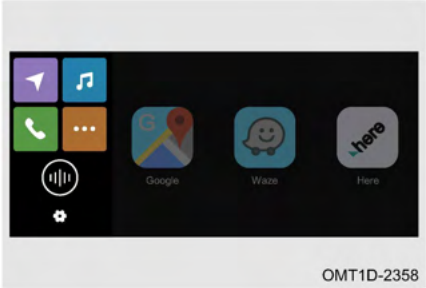


OMT1D-2355

Step 6: Select Transfer files on USB permission request screen, turn QDLink to ON when connecting USB is agreed, and screencast request screen will be popped up on phone;

OMT1D-2357

Step 7: Select START NOW on screencast request screen of phone;



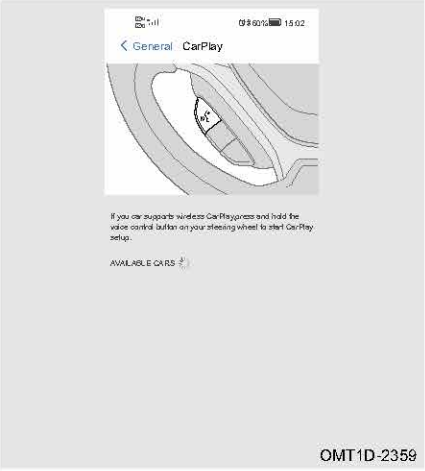
OMT1D-2358

Step 8: Enter QDlink screencast screen.

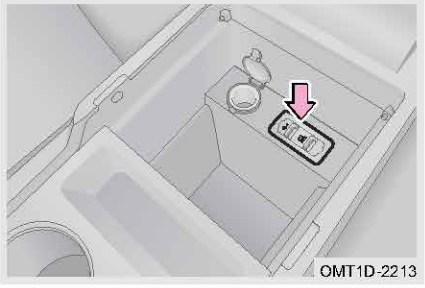
Apple CarPlay (iOS)

■Connecting method

Step 1: Turn Listen for "Hey Siri" and Press Home for Siri to ON on Settings (Siri&search) screen of phone;

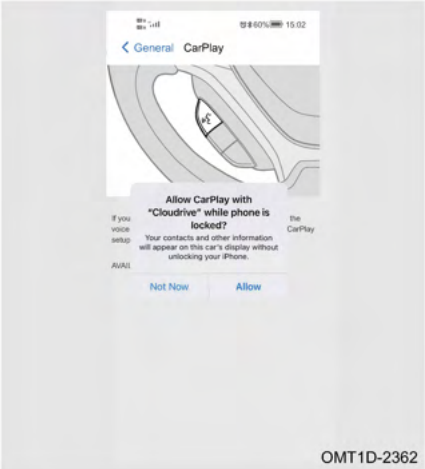


Step 2: Turn CarPlay to ON on Settings (General) screen of phone;



Step 3: Connect USB port and phone using original data cable;

Note: Only USB port " " supports Apple CarPlay screencast function.



OMT1D-2362

Step 4: Select Allow on CarPlay permission request screen;

OMT1D-2361

Step 5: Enter Apple CarPlay screencast screen.

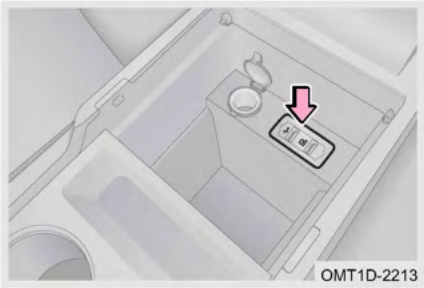
Android Auto (Android)

■Connecting method

OMM1D-2303

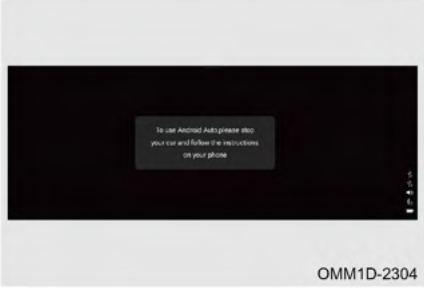
Step 1: Install the Google Framework;

Step 2: Perform the installation in Google Play and run Android Auto, install all supporting softwares according to the system prompt and update the existing program, and then Android Auto can run normal after completing the update.

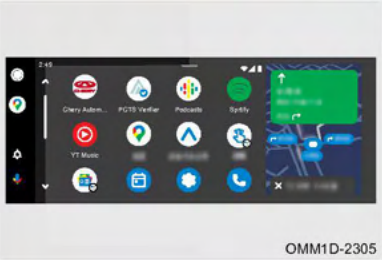

OMT1D-2213

Step 3: Connect USB port and phone using original data cable;

Note: Only USB port " " supports Android Auto screencast function. Before phone-link, please turn on the developer permissions in the phone settings.


OMM1D-2304

Step 4: If this phone is connected to the vehicle for the first time (a prompt will pop up on the head unit, please operate according to the prompt on the mobile phone, stop the vehicle and pull the parking brake), then the first connection setting can be completed;

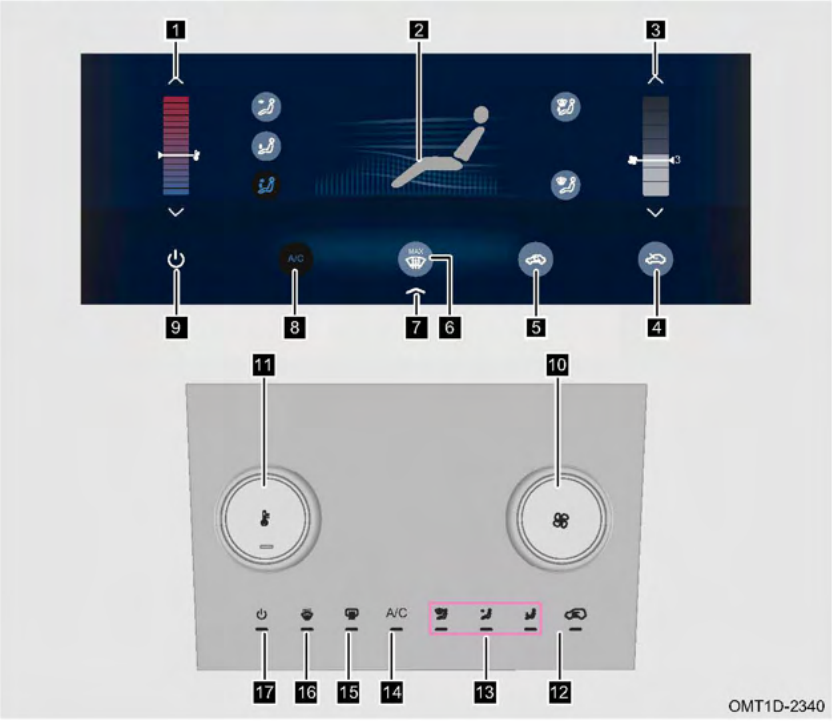


Step 5: Click "Android Auto" on the head unit APP to enter "Android Auto" mapping interface.

3-7. Air Conditioning System

Electric Air Conditioning (If Equipped)

Front row control panel



1 Temperature adjustment area

2 Mode adjustment soft button

3 Air speed adjustment area

4 Outside circulation soft button

5 Recirculated soft button

6 Front windshield defog and defrost soft button

7 A/C screen off soft button

8 A/C soft button

9 A/C switch soft button

10 Airflow volume adjustment knob

11 Temperature button

12 Outside/recirculated air mode button

13 Mode adjustment button

14 A/C button

15 Rear defrosting button

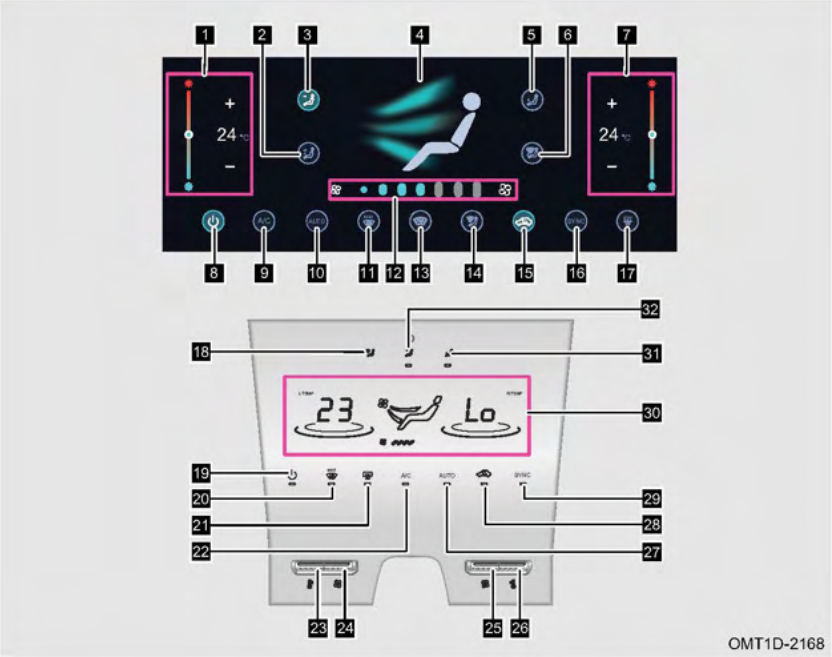
16 Front windshield defog and defrost button

17 A/C switch button

Note: Function buttons are different depending on the vehicle configuration. Please refer to the actual vehicle configuration.

Automatic A/C (If Equipped)

Front control panel (type A)



1 Driver temperature adjustment area

2 Face/foot mode soft button

3 Face mode soft button

4 Mode adjustment soft button

5 Foot mode soft button

6 Defrosting/foot mode soft button

7 Front passenger temperature adjustment area

8 A/C switch soft button

9 A/C soft button

10 AUTO soft button

11 Front windshield defogging and defrosting soft button

12 Air speed adjustment area

13 Front windshield heat soft button

14 Defrosting mode soft button

15 Outside/recirculated air mode soft button

16 Dual mode soft button

17 Air purification soft button

18 Defrosting mode button

19 A/C switch button

20 Front windshield defogging and defrosting button

21 Rear defrosting button

22 A/C button

23 Driver temperature adjustment button

24 Vehicle air speed adjustment button

25 Vehicle air speed adjustment button

26 Front passenger temperature adjustment button

27 AUTO button

28 Outside/recirculated air mode button

29 Dual mode button

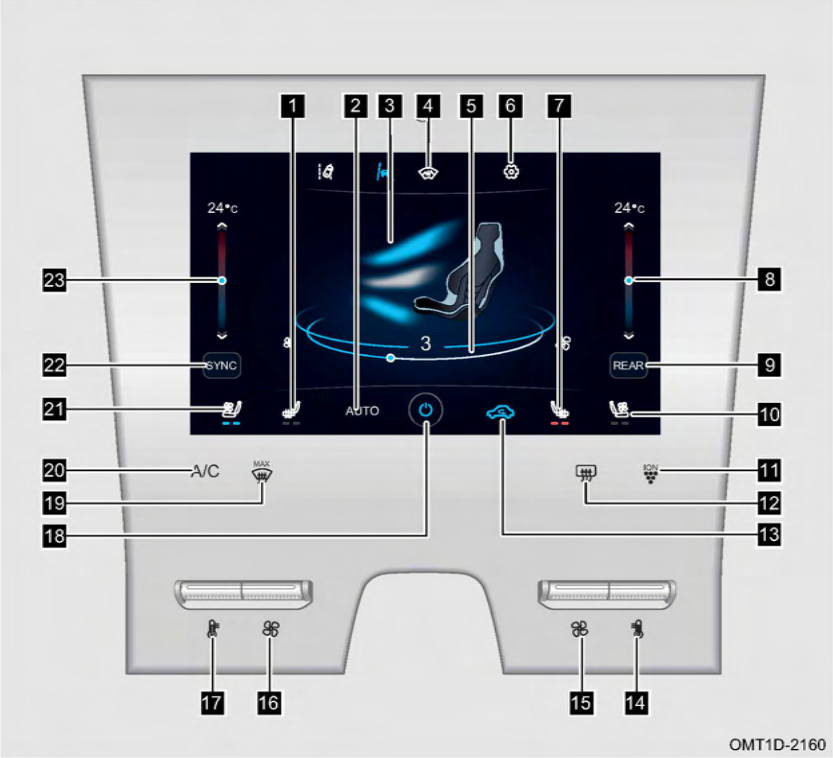
30 A/C status display area

31 Foot mode button

32 Face mode button

Note: Function buttons are different depending on the vehicle configuration. Please refer to the actual vehicle configuration.

Front control panel (type B)



1 Driver seat heater button

2 AUTO button

3 Mode adjustment button

4 Front windshield heating button

5 Airflow volume adjustment area

6 A/C setting button

7 Front passenger seat heater button

8 Front passenger temperature adjustment area

9 Rear A/C switch button

10 Front passenger seat ventilation button

11 Air purification button

12 Rear defrosting button

13 Outside/recirculated air mode button

14 Front passenger temperature adjustment button

15 Vehicle air speed adjustment button

16 Vehicle air speed adjustment button

17 Driver temperature adjustment button

18 A/C switch button

19 Front windshield defogging and defrosting button

20 A/C button

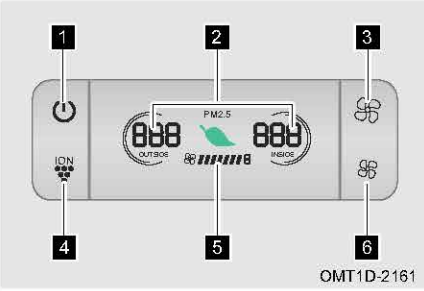
21 Driver seat ventilation button

22 Dual mode button

23 Driver temperature adjustment area

Note: Function buttons are different depending on the vehicle configuration. Please refer to the actual vehicle configuration.

Second row control panel (if equipped)



1 A/C switch button

2 PM2.5 value display area

3 Airflow volume increase button

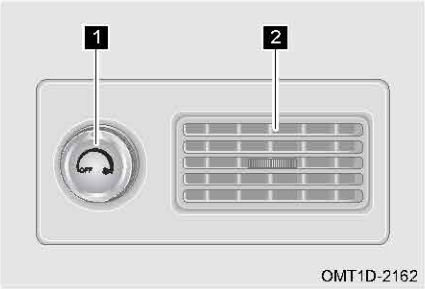
4 Air purification button

5 Airflow volume display area

6 Airflow volume decrease button

Note: Function of second row control panel is the same as the front control panel.

Third row control panel (if equipped)



1 Rear A/C air speed adjustment knob

2 Rear A/C outlets

Temperature adjustment

The A/C temperature can be adjusted by operating the temperature adjustment button on front control panel or sliding temperature adjustment area on slide display.

Airflow volume adjustment

The A/C airflow volume can be adjusted by operating the vehicle air speed adjustment button on front/second row control panel or sliding airflow volume adjustment area on slide display.

Dual mode button

Click the dual mode button on display, blue " SYNC " indicates that A/C is in single mode; white " SYNC " indicates that A/C is in dual mode; A/C temperature of driver/front passenger can be adjusted separately.

READ
System will memorize user operation which the head unit turns off last time when turning on head unit.

Outside/recirculated air mode button

Click outside/recirculated air mode button on display; blue " " indicates recirculated air mode; white " " indicates outside mode.

■Use the recirculated air mode under following conditions:

1. In dusty environment.
2. To quickly cool the air in the vehicle.
3. Insulate other peculiar smells from exterior.
4. To prevent outside exhaust gas from entering vehicle.

AUTO button

Click AUTO button on display; blue " AUTO " indicates automatic mode; White " AUTO " indicates manual mode.

In the automatic mode, the corresponding function exits from automatic mode when operating A/C button, mode adjustment button, adjusting air volume or

temperature to LOW/HI, however, other functions are still in automatic mode and " AUTO " is still white.

In the automatic mode, outside/recirculated air mode switches and the circulation function exits the automatic control, and other functions are still in the AUTO mode and " AUTO " is still blue.

In the automatic mode, click the AUTO button on display will not exit from automatic mode.

Mode adjustment button

The mode adjustment can be achieved by clicking the mode adjustment button (defrosting mode, face mode and foot mode can be combined) on display.

Blue " " indicates defrosting mode, it can adjust airflow blowing out from defroster outlet.

Blue " " indicates face mode, it can adjust airflow blowing out from center and face outlets on both sides.

Blue " " indicates foot mode, it can adjust airflow blowing out from foot outlet.

Note: Face mode and defrosting mode cannot be combined.

READ
If windshield windows become fogged-up during driving, defrosting mode is recommended. For details, refer to Front windshield defogging and defrosting button.

A/C switch button

Click the A/C switch button on display or operate the second row control panel. Blue " ⏻ " indicates that the A/C is turned on; White " ⏻ " indicates that the A/C is turned off.

Rear A/C switch button (if equipped)

Click rear A/C switch button on display, blue " REAR " indicates that rear A/C can be turned on; White " REAR " indicates that rear A/C can be turned off directly.

A/C button

Click A/C button on front control panel, orange " A/C " indicates that A/C compressor is turned on and cooling function is achieved; White " A/C " indicates that A/C compressor is stopped.

Air purification button (if equipped)

Click the air purification button on the front/second row control panel, orange " ION " indicates that air purification function is turned on, PM2.5 values of inside/outside are displayed on the front/second row control panel; White " ION " indicates that air purification function is turned off.

Note: After the air purification function is turned on, the air volume is adjusted to OFF, the temperature is adjusted to LOW/HI, the outside/recirculated air mode is switched on, the front windshield defogging and defrosting function is turned on, and then the air purification function is turned off.

READ

- The air purification function effect in winter is not obvious due to low ambient temperature in winter.
- When the air purification function is turned on, the outside/recirculated air mode is switched on, the air volume and mode may change.
- Turn on air purification function to ensure that the vehicle is not fogged, the response method of automatic A/C in summer, winter, spring and autumn is not exactly the same, but purification effect can be achieved.
- Air purification function is inoperative and the button is deactivated in following conditions:
  - One-button purification function cannot be turned on when temperature conditions are not met.
  - One-button purification function cannot be turned on when front windshield defogging and defrosting is turned on;
  - When the wiper is turned on (in high speed or low speed), one-button purification function cannot be turned on after 20 seconds;

Front windshield defogging and defrosting button

Click the front windshield defogging and defrosting button on front control panel, orange " MAX " indicates that front windshield defogging and defrosting function is turned on; White " MAX " indicates that front windshield defogging and defrosting function is turned off.

Front windshield defogging and defrosting: Adjust most of airflow blow to front windshield and a small amount of airflow blow to side windshield.

When the airflow volume is not OFF, touching front windshield defogging and defrosting button will start the outside air mode and air conditioning compressor forcibly.

READ

- If the A/C fails to cool, it will affect the defogging effect. Please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- When defogging in humid climate (such as rain and snow), please keep A/C on. If A/C is off, it will affect defogging effect.
- When defogging in humid climate (such as rain and snow), please keep outside air mode. If recirculated air mode is selected, it will affect defogging effect.
- After wiping off all frost or fog, to improve comfort in vehicle, adjust mode and airflow volume to proper position.
- When defogging in winter, please keep outside air mode, adjust the direction of partial heat, the air outlets on both sides of the instrument panel face the windows on both sides, and when outside temperature is above 0℃, A/C auxiliary defogging is needed.

CAUTION

- For driving safety, please use the defogging function correctly.
- Please do not use recirculated air mode for a long time in winter, otherwise the front windshield will be fogged quickly.
- Poor visibility will increase the risk of traffic accidents and personal injury. Therefore, it is very important for traffic safety to ensure a good visibility during driving.

Front windshield heating button (if equipped)

After vehicle is started, click the front windshield heating button on display, blue " " indicates that front windshield heating function is turned on, and it is turned off automatically after the function works approximately 20 minutes; White " " indicates that front windshield heating function is turned off.

CAUTION

- Do not scratch or damage the heater wires when cleaning the front windshield.
- Make sure that the heating function is turned off when the fog and frost on front windshield surface are cleared.
- When the battery is low, the front windshield heating function cannot be turned on to ensure that vehicle starts normally.

WARNING

To prevent burning yourself, do not touch the front windshield when the front windshield heating function is operating or has just turned off.

Rear defrosting button (if equipped)

After vehicle is started, click the rear defrosting button on front control panel, orange " " indicates that rear windshield/outside rear view mirror defrosting function is turned on, and it is turned off automatically after the function works approximately 20 minutes; White " " indicates that rear windshield/outside rear view mirror defrosting function is turned off.

CAUTION

- Please refer to your real vehicle about the heating function and rear defrosting function (if equipped) of outside rear view mirror.
- Do not scratch or damage the heater wires when cleaning the rear windshield/outside rear view mirror.
- When the battery is low, the rear windshield/outside rear view mirror defrosting function cannot be turned on to ensure that vehicle starts normally.
- Make sure that the rear windshield/outside rear view mirror defrosting function are turned off when the fog and frost on rear windshield/outside rear view mirror surface are cleared.

WARNING

To prevent burning yourself, do not touch the rear windshield/outside rear view mirror when the rear windshield/outside rear view mirror defrosting function is operating or has just turned off.

A/C setting button (if equipped)

A/C setting screen will pop up when clicking the A/C setting button on display, personalized setting for A/C system can be set based on the user' s usage habits.

[Cabin Auto Cleaning]: A/C will perform self-cleaning on time automatically after user locks the vehicle and leaves; It is used to dry the A/C pipeline to keep A/C system dry and avoid the accumulation of a large number of bacteria and other dirt.

[Auto Recirculating in Parking]: The mode will automatically switch to recirculated air mode to prevent exhaust gas from the vehicle in front entering.

[Air Speed Auto Down for Bluetooth Calling]: A/C automatically lowers air speed during Bluetooth calls.

[A/C Purification Auto Operation]: A/C purification system will automatically operate when high PM2.5 concentration in vehicle is detected. Air Quality Control System (AQS) will automatically turn on the recirculated air mode when it detects the outside air quality level dropping. When the air quality returns to an appropriate level, the recirculated air mode will automatically close; Air Quality Control System (AQS) is not designed to detect odorous gases; when ambient temperature is no more than 2°C, the Air Quality Control

System (AQS) does not respond to avoid the risk of windshield and window fogging.

[A/C Screen Brightness]: Screen brightness adjustment can be achieved by sliding brightness adjustment area on display.

[Auto Defogging Function]: A/C will be automatically defogging when the vehicle is fogging up to ensure the driving safety.

[Cabin Auto Ventilation]: The vehicle will be automatically ventilated before the user unlocks and enters the vehicle.

[Custom A/C]: Automatic A/C effect can be divided into energy saving/comfort/strong by setting this option.

READ

- The setting items are different depending on the vehicle configuration. Please refer to the actual vehicle configuration.
- A/C segment display setting needs to be set on audio system (for details, refer to "Audio System").
- The blower can work up to two times before starting vehicle.
- After the setting item of automatic defogging function is turned on, the air conditioning will start automatically under certain conditions, which is a normal phenomenon.

Air Outlets Airflow Control

Center outlets

Move center outlet adjustment lever up and down, left and right by hand to adjust direction of airflow.

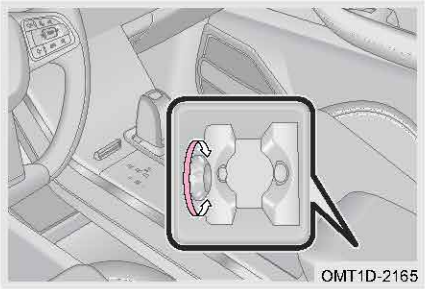
Side outlets

Move left/right side outlet adjustment lever up, down, left or right by hand to adjust direction of airflow.

Armrest outlets

Move armrest box outlet adjustment lever up, down, left or right by hand to adjust direction of airflow.

Refrigeration Function of Armrest Box on Auxiliary Fascia Console (If Equipped)



Place the required refrigerated items (e. g. canned drinks) in armrest box on auxiliary fascia console and A/C mode is adjusted to face mode, face/foot mode, then perform A/C cooling operation. Rotate the internal knob of the armrest box counterclockwise to refrigerate the required refrigerated items.

READ

The interior designs are different depending on the vehicle configuration. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

WARNING

Armrest box on auxiliary fascia console can not be closed if the refrigerated items are oversize. The opening armrest box may hinder the driver' s arm movement to prevent injury.

Automatic Defogging Function (If Equipped)

The automatic defogging function can be set through the audio. When front windshield has the risk of fogging, the air conditioning will automatically remove the fog on the front windshield to ensure the driving safety.

READ

After the setting item of automatic defogging function is turned on, the A/C will start automatically under certain conditions, which is a normal phenomenon.

Blower Advancing Opening and Blower Delay Closing (If Equipped)

Blower advancing opening

In hot summer, when the vehicle is parked outside, the temperature in the vehicle will be high. The blower advancing opening function can be set through the audio setting to cool the temperature in advance, while the peculiar smell from the interior trim under high-temperature is removed.

When the outside temperature is higher than 20°C and the system detects that the battery voltage meets the requirements, the vehicle will deactivate fortifying and the blower will start working in advance (30 seconds).

When the working time of the blower exceeds 30 seconds, any door is opened or the vehicle is fortified, the blower will stop working.

READ
The blower can operate up to two times before starting vehicle.

Delay closing function

The interior automatic cleaning function can be set through the audio setting to dry the air conditioning pipeline to keep air conditioning system dry and avoid the accumulation of a large number of bacteria and other dirt.

A/C was turned on during the last driving, and the battery voltage meets the requirements. After the vehicle is fortified for more than 5 minutes, the blower starts to work for 1 minute and then stops working.

READ
Blower advancing opening and blower delay closing functions can be set in audio system.

Air Conditioning Refrigeration Operation

Front air conditioning refrigeration (electric air conditioning)

When the engine is working:

The air conditioning cooling can be achieved by operating the A/C button on A/C control panel or on display. The A/C temperature can be adjusted by operating the temperature adjustment button (rotate counterclockwise) on A/C control panel or temperature adjustment area on display; The A/C airflow volume can be adjusted by operating the air speed adjustment button on A/C control panel or airflow volume adjustment area on display. It is recommended to adjust mode to face mode, Select recirculated air mode when ambient temperature is above 30°C.

Front air conditioning refrigeration operation (automatic air conditioning)

When the engine is working:

Click the AUTO button on display to set temperature, automatically control mode, air volume, outside/recirculated air mode, refrigeration system starts operating.

For your convenience and to improve the refrigeration effect of the air conditioner, click the AUTO button on display and set the A/C temperature to 22°C.

In the automatic mode, the corresponding function exits from automatic mode when operating A/C button, mode adjustment button, air speed adjustment or temperature LOW/HI, however, other functions are still in automatic mode and " AUTO " is still white.

Rear air conditioning refrigeration operation (if equipped)

When the engine is working:

Rear A/C refrigeration mode is enabled after pressing the rear A/C switch button, clicking A/C button, and operating the rear A/C air speed adjustment knob.

Note: Rear A/C can only refrigerate but not heat.

■ For the best cooling effect, please keep the surface of the A/C filter clean without obvious blockage and operate as follows:

Step 1: Adjust air volume to the max level;

Step 2: Adjust temperature to max cool;

Step 3: Adjust outside/recirculated air mode adjustment to recirculated air mode;

Step 4: Adjust mode adjustment to face mode;

Step 5: Turn on the refrigeration system (A/C compressor is turned on, A/C indicator comes on).

READ

- Surface dirt and block in A/C condenser surface may cause poor refrigeration effect, please keep condenser clean.
- When air is cooled down quickly in heat humid condition, fog may be seen from outlet, it is normal physical phenomenon.
- When the temperature is low, such as in winter, even if indicator comes on after operating A/C button, A/C compressor still cannot be started.
- After using A/C refrigeration system, water is dripping from the A/C drain pipe and forming a pool, it is normal.
- Refrigerant filled in A/C system will decrease as time, if you feel refrigeration effect of A/C is poor, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair in time.
- It is recommended to turn on A/C refrigeration system not less than 5 minutes every month and open the window simultaneously, this will help to prevent A/C system damage due to lack of lubricant, and also prevent evaporator odor due to moist and germ.
- If A/C is on and vehicle is continually climbing long slopes, or is in heavy slow moving traffic for a prolonged period, the engine may become overheated. Please observe the high coolant temperature warning light. If engine is overheating, it is advisable to turn off A/C.
- After temperature in vehicle is decreased to lower temperature, to reduce the influence to power system power and fuel consumption, compressor will turn off automatically, so if using A/C in spring and autumn seasons with low temperature, the compressor will be turned on or off automatically, this is normal.
- During sudden acceleration, overtaking and climbing, power system needs more power for compensation. At this time, if the A/C is operating, the compressor may be turned off automatically, if it does not turn off and you feel lack of power, it is recommended to turn off A/C.

WARNING

- To extend service life of A/C system, do not use the A/C for a long time with low speed when using A/C refrigeration.
- It is forbidden to repair A/C system by yourself, since the high pressure refrigerant is harmful to human, it is necessary to go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair.
- Please purchase Chery special refrigerant and compressor lubricant at Chery authorized service station, otherwise, A/C system damages sustained by this are not under warranty.
- In hot summer, the temperature in closed vehicle will quickly increase due to sunshine, this may cause personal or animal injury or death, especially for the infants, even in short time.

Air Conditioning Heating Operation

When the engine is working:

The A/C temperature can be adjusted by operating the temperature adjustment button on front row control panel or sliding temperature adjustment area on slide display; The A/C airflow volume can be adjusted by operating the vehicle air speed adjustment button on front/second row control panel or sliding airflow volume adjustment area on slide display. It is recommended to adjust mode to foot mode and turn off refrigeration system (A/C compressor is turned off).

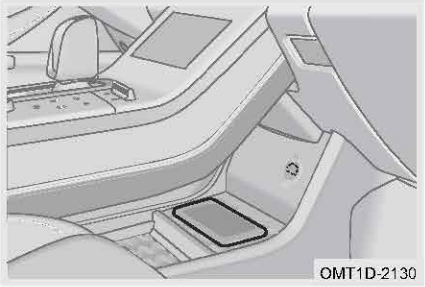
Note: The third row A/C can only refrigerate but not heat.

3-8. Wireless Charging

Wireless Charging (If Equipped)

Wireless charging adopts electromagnetic induction technology, with convenience, versatility, novelty and safety, to make you can have a better experience while driving.

Usage method



While vehicle power is switched to ON mode, the wireless charging starts to work after putting the mobile phone in wireless charging sensing area, and the audio head unit displays " ". The audio head unit displays " " after charging is completely.

■ In the following conditions, the wireless charging may not work properly:

1. The mobile phone cannot be charged if the back of the phone is more than 8 mm away from wireless charging sensing area.
2. The mobile phone cannot be charged if the back of the phone has thick metal (such as coin, metal mobile phone shell), and audio head unit displays " ".
3. When the surface temperature of wireless charging sensing area is > 65°C due to sun exposure, the wireless charging module will trigger self-protection and the mobile phone cannot be charged.

READ

- The interior designs are different depending on the configuration of the vehicle. Please refer to the actual vehicle.
- Wireless charging function is set in audio system (for details, refer to "-Audio System").
- Wireless charging function only supports mobile phones with wireless charging function.
- Please put the mobile phone in the center of the mobile phone slot. If you accelerate, decelerate or turn sharply during driving, the mobile phone will shake, which may affect the charging efficiency and stability.

CAUTION

- In the process of normal use of the vehicle, in order to ensure the identification of the vehicle to smart key, there will be a temporary charging shield.
- If your mobile phone does not support the wireless charging function, it is recommended that do not use the wireless charging patch. The quality of the wireless charging patch in the market is uneven, and frequent use is easy to damage (such as function failure, interface poor contact, metal foreign object recognition failure, etc.).

Phone forgetting reminder function

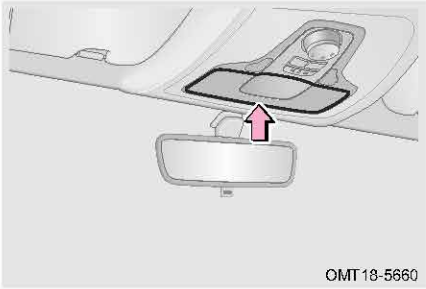
While vehicle power is switched to OFF mode, open driver door and the mobile phone is left in wireless charging sensing area, it will sound an alarm 20 seconds or take the phone out within 20 seconds, the alarm will stop.

Note: Phone forgetting reminder function is set in audio system after wireless charging function is turned on.

3-9. Storage Space

Storage Space

Glasses box

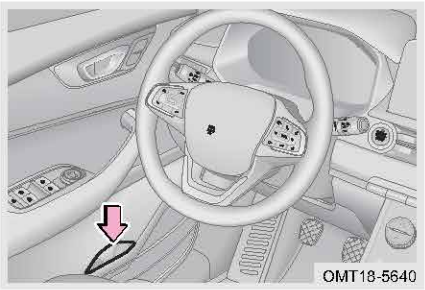


Glasses box is near interior front dome light closely. It can be used to store glasses or other small items.

READ

The interior designs are different depending on the configuration of the vehicle. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

Door storage boxes

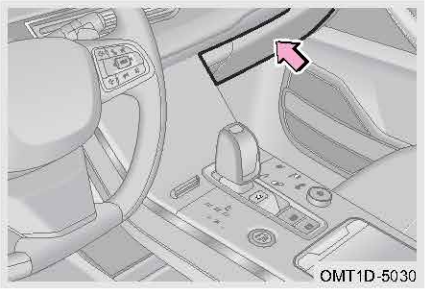


Door storage boxes on front and rear doors can be used for storing maps, cups and other items.

READ

The interior designs are different depending on the configuration of the vehicle. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

Glove box



Glove box is used to store map, instructions and other items.

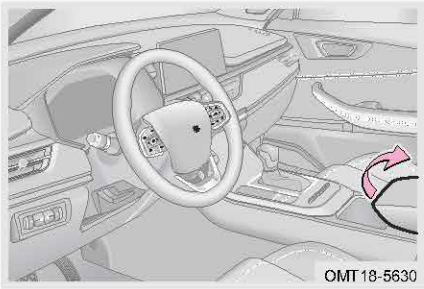
READ

The interior designs are different depending on the configuration of the vehicle. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

WARNING

Before driving, make sure that the glove box is closed in place. Otherwise in case of emergency braking or emergency steering, it may cause accidents and serious injury or even death.

Armrest box on auxiliary fascia console



Armrest box on auxiliary fascia console is used to store maps, instructions and other items.

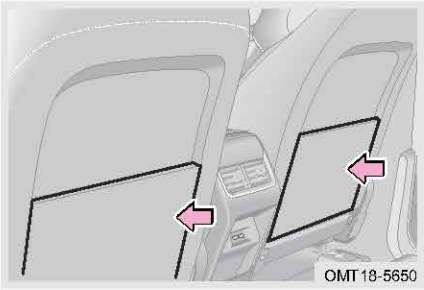
READ

The interior designs are different depending on the configuration of the vehicle. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

WARNING

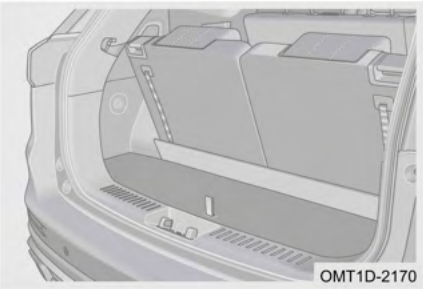
- Adults or children are not allowed to sit on the armrest box on auxiliary fascia console.
- Armrest box on auxiliary fascia console must be closed when the vehicle is running, and the opening armrest box on auxiliary fascia console may hinder the driver’s arm movement to prevent injury.

Seat storage bags



Front seatbacks are both equipped with storage bags on backside, which are used to store documents, instructions etc.

Luggage compartment



To enlarge space for stowing luggage, the rear seats can be folded when no passenger in seats (for details, refer to "Seats").

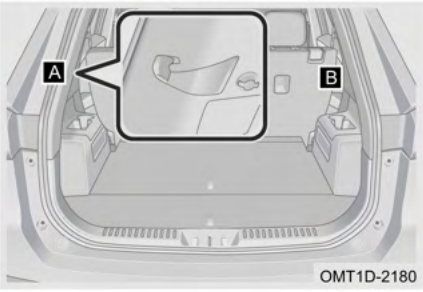
■ When stowing luggage in the vehicle, observe the following precautions:

1. Be careful to keep the vehicle balanced.
2. For better fuel economy, do not stow unneeded items.
3. Make sure that the stowing items are not oversize to prevent the back door from closing properly.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not drive with the back door open or not closed, to prevent items from being thrown out to cause personal injury.
- Do not allow anyone to sit in the luggage compartment. The passengers should sit in their seats with their seat belts properly fastened. Otherwise, they may be seriously injured in event of sudden braking or a collision.
- Do not stack goods or luggage higher than seatback. Keep them low, as close to the floor as possible to prevent them sliding forward in event of braking, causing personal injury.

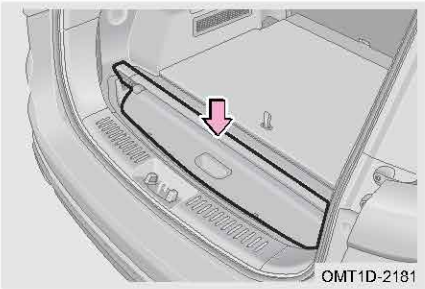
Luggage curtain (if equipped)



Pull the luggage curtain to the slots of point A and point B to secure it, and confirm if it is secured properly.

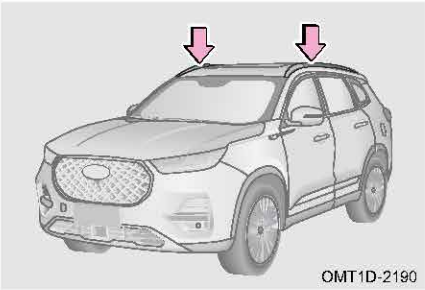
READ

Do not place any object on luggage curtain, otherwise, it may result in luggage curtain damage.



Push the two ends of the luggage curtain inward to remove the curtain. After the curtain is removed, it can be placed in the luggage compartment storage box.

Carrier



Roof carrier is used for loading cargo, load is 50 kg. Be sure that the total weight of the loading cargo on the carrier or loading tool (such as luggage compartment, cross rod etc.) does not exceed 50 kg. Overweight will cause carrier, moon roof glass, body roof and other components damaged, the various problems caused by overweight are not within the warranty.

⚠ CAUTION

- Loading long or wide cargo do not exceed overall length or width of the vehicle.
- Before driving, make sure the cargo is securely attached to the roof carrier. Blankets or other protection items can be placed between the cargo and the roof. Be careful not to scratch the roof surface.

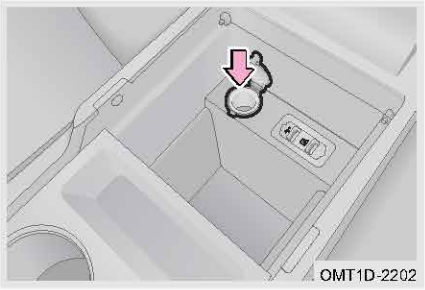
⚠ WARNING

- Apply loads evenly. Improper loading may cause deterioration of steering or braking control, which may cause death or serious injury.
- Loading cargo on carrier will raise the vehicle center of gravity. Avoid high speeds, sudden starts, sharp turns, sudden braking or abrupt maneuvers, otherwise it may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover due to failure to operate vehicle.

3-10. Power Outlet

Power Outlet

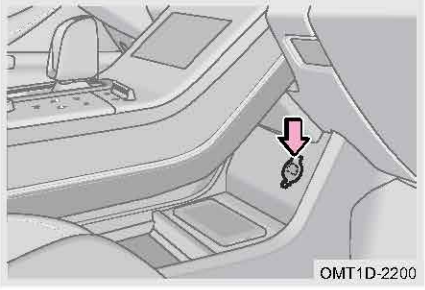
Front power outlet (type A)



Front power outlet is located in the center armrest.

Power outlet can be used only when vehicle power is switched to ACC/ON mode.

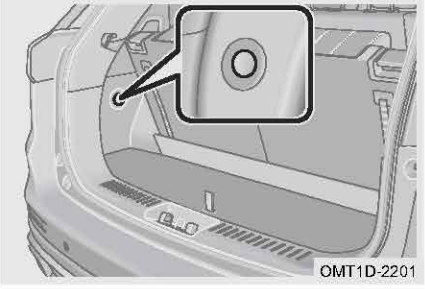
Front power outlet (type B)



Front power outlet is located on the front end of auxiliary fascia console.

Power outlet can be used only when vehicle power is switched to ACC/ON mode.

Rear power outlet



Rear power outlet is located on the left side of luggage compartment.

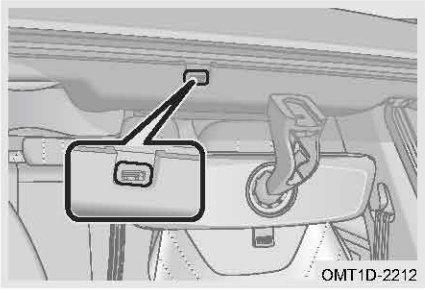
Power outlet can be used only when vehicle power is switched to ACC/ON mode.

⚠ CAUTION

- To prevent the fuse from being blown, do not use electrical equipment with high power (120 W or more).
- To prevent the battery from discharging, do not use the power outlet longer than necessary when the engine is not running.
- Do not insert anything or allow any liquid to get into the outlet other than an appropriate plug. Failure to do so may cause electrical failure or short circuits.

USB Port

Top USB port (if equipped)

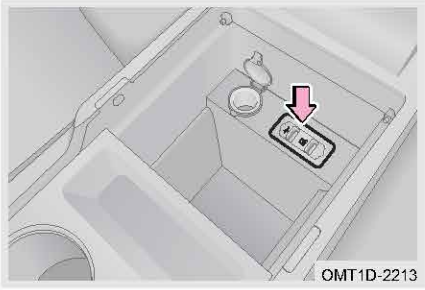


The top USB port is located above the inside rear view mirrors and is used to supply power for self-installed driving recorder.

⚠ CAUTION

The top USB port is only used to supply power for driving recorder and cannot be used for charging other electrical appliances.

Front USB port (type A)

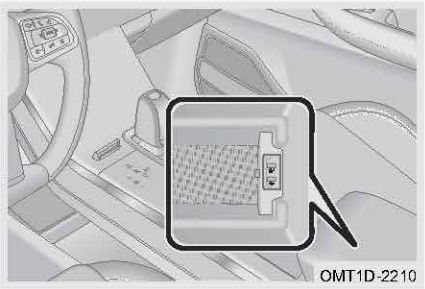


Front USB port is located in the center armrest.

USB port " ": It can be used for reading U disc and charging the electrical equipment with low power, such as phone etc.

USB port " ": It can be used for reading U disc, phone-link and charging the electrical equipment with low power, such as phone etc.

Front USB port (type B)

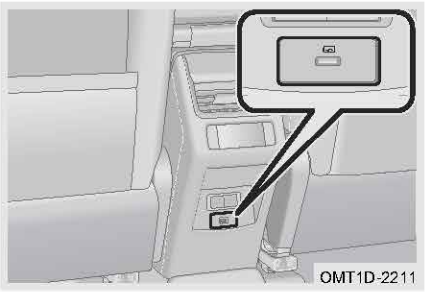


Front USB port is located in the armrest box on auxiliary fascia console.

USB port " ": It can be used for reading U disc and charging the electrical equipment with low power, such as phone etc.

USB port " ": It can be used for reading U disc, phone-link and charging the electrical equipment with low power, such as phone etc.

Rear USB port

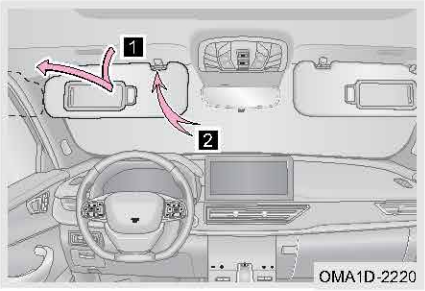


Rear USB port is located under the rear air outlet of center armrest box.

Rear USB port can be used for charging the electrical equipment with low power, such as phone etc.

3-11. Sun Visors and Vanity Mirrors

Sun Visors and Vanity Mirrors



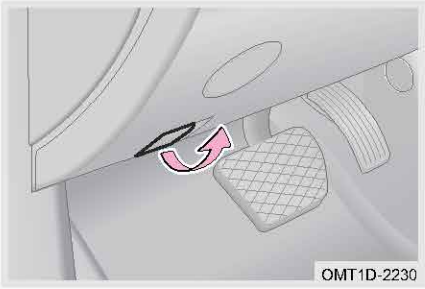
Horizontally move the vanity mirror sliding plate to use the vanity mirror. For vehicle equipped with vanity mirror light, the corresponding vanity mirror light will come on when moving the vanity mirror sliding plate.

1 Flip the sun visor down.

2 Detach the hook and turn it outward to shade sidelight.

3-12. Hood

Opening/closing the hood



Step 1: The hood will spring up slightly by pulling hood release lever twice;

Step 2: Lift the hood up and lift and support the hood under action of the air spring;

Step 3: Lower the hood and close it until the latch is locked;

Step 4: After closing the hood, lift the hood lightly to determine if hood is fully closed.

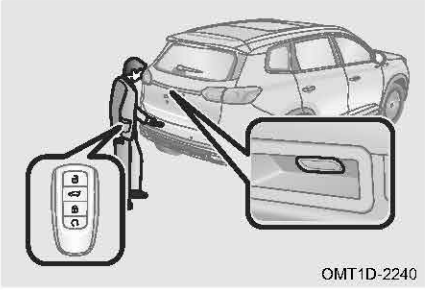
CAUTION

- Before closing the hood, check if you have not left any tools, rags etc. in the engine compartment.
- When closing hood, do not press it by hand, otherwise it may be deformed.
- Make sure that hood is closed before driving, otherwise accidents and personal injury may occur.

3-13. Back Door

Manual Back Door

Opening/closing back door

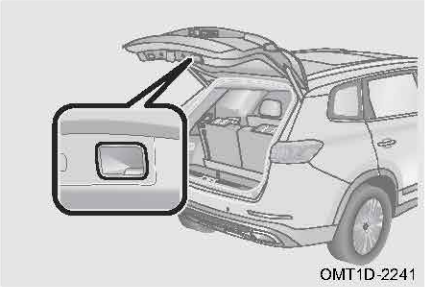


Method 1: With central lock unlocked, approach to back of vehicle, press back door exterior switch and lift up to open back door.

Method 2: With central lock locked, approach to back of vehicle when carrying smart key, press back door exterior switch and lift up to open back door.

READ

When the vehicle power is turned to ACC/ON mode and the central control lock is locked, please first unlock the central control lock and then open it with back door exterior switch.



Pull the back door assist handle down and release it before the back door is fully closed. Make sure the back door is fully closed before leaving the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING
Make sure that the back door is closed before driving, otherwise, it may result accidents and related parts may be damaged.

Power Back Door (If Equipped)

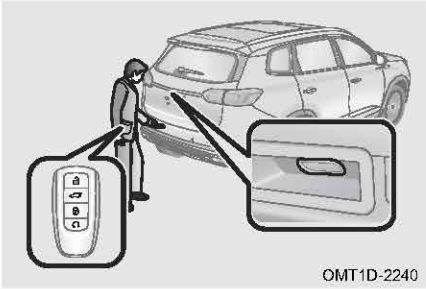
For your convenience, power back door can be opened/closed in various ways (such as driver door switch, back door exterior switch, back door interior switch, smart key remote control, smart key sensing opening, kick (if equipped) and voice), also achieve height adjustment function.

Driver door switch

With central control lock unlocked, long press " " switch, turn signal lights will come on and power back door will be opened/closed.

When the power back door is moving, press " " switch to suspend the action of the power back door.

Back door exterior switch

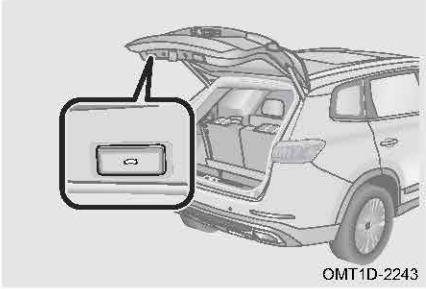


Method 1: With central control lock unlocked, approach to back of vehicle and press back door exterior switch, turn signal lights will come on and power back door will be opened/closed.

Method 2: With central lock locked, approach to back of vehicle when carrying smart key and press back door exterior switch, turn signal lights will come on and power back door will be opened/closed.

READ
When the vehicle power is turned to ACC/ON mode and the central control lock is locked, please first unlock the central control lock and then open it with back door exterior switch.

Back door interior switch



When the power back door opens, press " " switch to close the power back door.

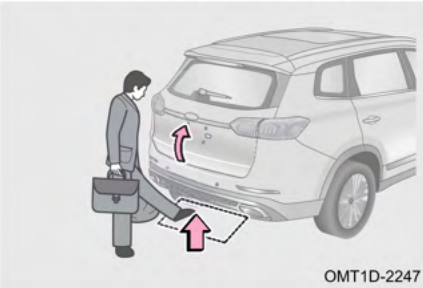
When the power back door is moving, press " " switch to suspend the action of the power back door.

After the power back door button is pressed, adjust it to your desire height; long press " " switch until the vehicle gives a light prompt, and the power back door opening height is set successfully.

Smart key remote control

While vehicle power is switched to OFF mode, long press back door opener button on smart key and power back door will be opened/closed.

Kick open back door (if equipped)

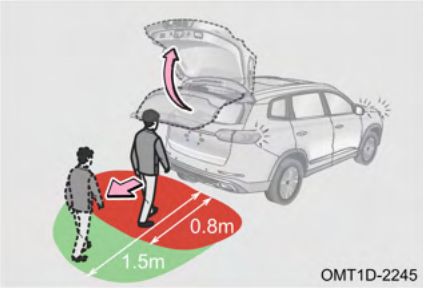

OMT1D-2247

Step 1: When vehicle is in lock state, vehicle power is turned to OFF mode.

Step 2: Carry the legal key and be within the detection range behind the vehicle, quickly swing your foot and leg up and as close to the bumper as possible.

Successful prompt of kick action: Stretch out a single foot to make kick action to the lower edge of bumper. At this time, the turn signal lights flash twice quickly and the power back door opens automatically.

Smart key sensing (if equipped)



OMT1D-2245

Step 1: While vehicle power is switched to OFF mode or vehicle is started remotely, four doors are closed;

Step 2: Approach to the back of vehicle within 0.8 m when carrying smart key on your person, the system automatically recognizes validity of smart key, after turn signal lights come on, take a step back, power back door opens.

READ

- For details about voice recognition function, refer to "Audio System".
- Smart key sensing back door open needs to be set in audio system (for details, refer to "Audio System").
- Power back door opening height can also be set in audio system (for details, refer to "Audio System").
- If the back door opening height is too low or too high, the back door opening height cannot be set.
- Smart key sensing back door open function is turned off after the vehicle is locked for 3 days, restarting the engine will restore the function.
- Do not put smart key together with computer, cordless mouse, phone, etc. failure to do so may cause the power back door cannot sense open/close.
- When any switch (such as power back door switch, power back door button, back door open button) is activated during the movement of the power back door, the back door will stop moving.
- The range of kicks that the system can detect is in the area directly below the vehicle license plate.
- This function will not be triggered by sweeping left and right or kicking up but not putting down in the sensing area.
- When working or repairing in the rear pumper position, the sensor enters the environmental protection mode and no kick action is possible.
- If the vehicle does not give sound-light prompt after the kick action is performed and waiting for a period of time, it indicates that the kick action is not recognized and needs to be performed again. If the back door cannot be opened after several attempts, you need to wait for at least 10 s and then kick again under the bumper.
- Heavy rain (high-pressure vehicle washing), heavy snow, serious dirt on the rear bumper, and installation of traction devices at the rear of the vehicle, etc. may reduce the sensitivity of the sensor, which is normal.

⚠ CAUTION

- When the power back door is abnormal, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- When the power back door opens, do not pull electric support rod laterally, which may cause damage to related parts.
- Before driving, make sure that back door is closed in place, otherwise it may cause accidents and damage to related parts.
- Before opening power back door, be sure to note that there should be no debris, rear wall, etc. in the opening range, which could result in scratching back door.
- When closing the back door, make sure that nobody will be caught. If closing is interrupted, close it again.
- When the power back door is opened to the highest position, it cannot be pushed or supported by hand to higher place, which may cause damage to related parts.
- When closing power back door by hand, operate gently, do not operate with brute force, which may damage motor and module.
- When going uphill or downhill, due to change in the center of gravity, the power back door may not open or close. This is normal. Open or close it by hand.
- If the battery cable is disconnected and reconnected, the power back door needs to be manually closed to locked position at a constant speed, and then press the power back door switch to open/close the power back door normally.

⚠ WARNING

Make sure that the back door is closed before driving, otherwise, it may result accidents and related parts may be damaged.

Power back door jam protection function

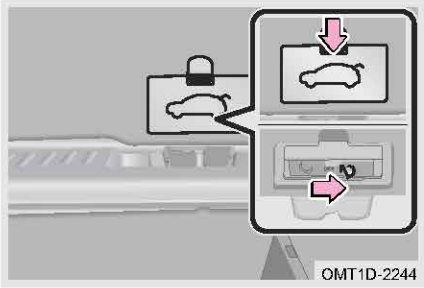
Positive jam protection: When power back door is opening, if it encounters resistance (such as wall, obstacle, etc.), the back door positive jam protection works to avoid vehicle damage.

Reverse jam protection: When power back door is closing, if it encounters resistance (such as children, luggage etc.), the back door reverse jam protection works to avoid child injury and vehicle damage.

⚠ WARNING

Although the power back door is equipped with jam protection function, do not activate jam protection function on purpose to avoid accidental injury.

Back Door Emergency Opening



Back door cannot be opened when battery is depleted or under similar conditions. In this case, the back door can be opened with back door emergency device switch (stop the vehicle steadily as much as possible).

Step 1: Fold the rear seatback;

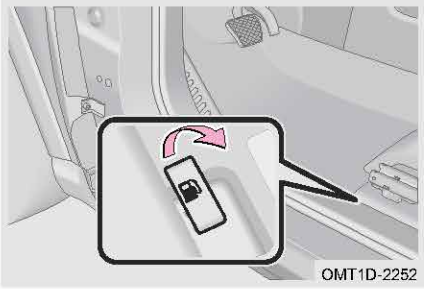
Step 2: Get in the rear of vehicle and open emergency device cover;

Step 3: Move the emergency device switch to right with hand, release it, and then push the back door to open it.

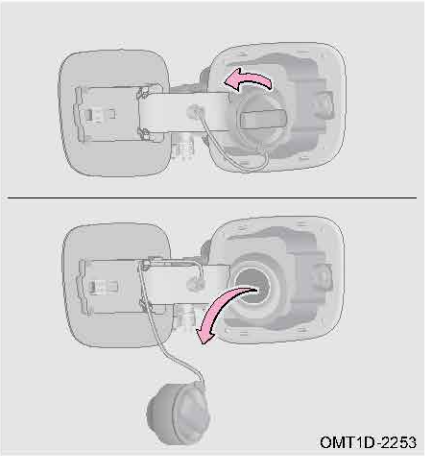
3-14. Fuel Tank Cap

Fuel Tank Cap

Manual Fuel Tank Cap



Step 1: Pull up fuel tank cap release lever and the fuel tank cap pops out;



Step 2: Turn fuel filler cap counterclockwise to remove it;

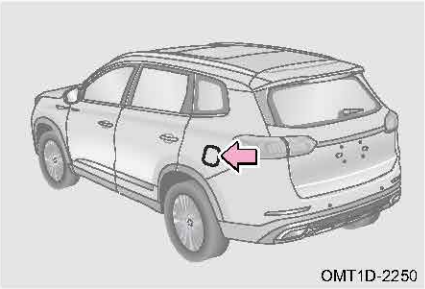
Step 3: After refueling, turn fuel filler cap clockwise until a "click" sound is heard;

Step 4: Close fuel tank cap.

READ

Fuel may pollute environment. Therefore, squirted fuel should be collected and disposed of by a professional.

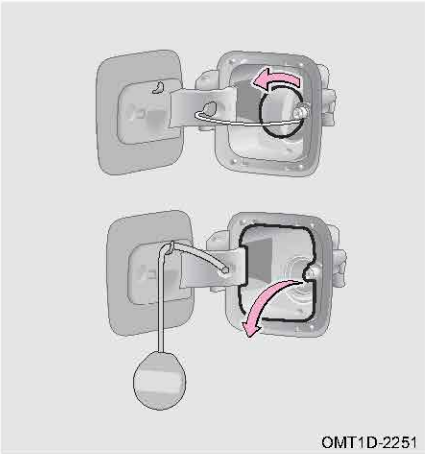
Electric Fuel Tank Cap



Step 1: After the vehicle fortifying is deactivated, push center rear of fuel tank cap, the cap will pop up and slightly open to maximum angle.

CAUTION

Open/close fuel tank cap after the vehicle fortifying is deactivated, otherwise, it may cause damage related components of fuel tank cap.



Step 2: Turn fuel filler cap counterclockwise to remove it;

Step 3: After refueling, turn fuel filler cap clockwise until a "click" sound is heard;

Step 4: Close fuel tank cap.

READ

Fuel may pollute environment. Therefore, squirted fuel should be collected and disposed of by a professional.

CAUTION

- Never add diesel to fuel tank.
- After fuel filler cap is tightened firmly, loose your hand and the cap will turn slightly in the opposite direction. This is normal.
- To prevent damage to the cap, apply force only in the direction of rotation. Do not pull or pay it.
- A slight whooshing sound may be heard when the fuel tank cap is loosened. This is normal.
- If fuel overflows during refueling, wipe it off immediately to avoid damage to vehicle paint surface.
- When freezing at low temperature, after the vehicle fortifying is deactivated, tap fuel tank cap and then fuel tank cap opens. It is normal phenomenon.
- During using, if fuel tank cap is not closed, drive vehicle to a safe area and stop it, then close the cap again.
- If the vehicle fortifying is not deactivated, never push fuel tank cap with a strong force as this may cause damage related components of fuel tank cap.

⚠ WARNING

- Before refueling, turn ENGINE START STOP switch off and close all doors and windows.
- Do not inhale vaporized fuel, as the fuel contains substances that are harmful for the health.
- Make sure that the fuel filler cap is tightened securely to prevent fuel spillage, causing an accident.
- Because gasoline is extremely flammable, smoking is prohibited when refueling, and there must be no other sparks or open flames.
- Do not remove the fuel filler cap quickly when opening it. In hot weather, if cap is removed suddenly, high-pressed fuel vapor may be ejected from the filler neck and cause personal injury.
- After exiting the vehicle and before opening the fuel tank cap, touch an unpainted metal surface to discharge any static electricity. It is important to discharge static electricity before refueling because sparks resulting from static electricity can cause fuel vapors to ignite while refueling.
- Do not attempt to continue to refuel after the fuel gun is automatically turned off! Otherwise, the fuel tank may be too full, causing fuel to overflow the fuel tank, which can easily cause fire, explosion and serious injury.

4-1. Vehicle Power Mode

ENGINE START STOP Switch 190

Electric Steering Column Lock (Vehicle with Manual Transmission)..... 191

4-2. Starting and Turning off Engine

Normal Starting and Turning off..... 192

Starting and Turning off in Emergency 193

Adaptive Engine Control System 194

Particulate Filter (GPF) (if Equipped) 195

4-3. Transmission

Automatic Transmission 195

4-4. Intelligent Timely All Wheel Drive System (AWD)

Intelligent Timely All Wheel Drive System (AWD) (If Equipped) 200

Driving Mode 201

4-5. Steering System

Electric Power Steering System (EPS)..... 207

4-6. Brake System

Electric Parking Brake (EPB) System..... 208

Automatic Parking System (AUTO HOLD)..... 210

Vacuum Booster 212

Foot Brake 213

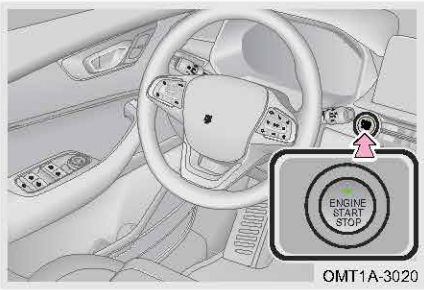
4-7. Airbag (SRS)

Airbag (SRS)..... 214

4-1. Vehicle Power Mode

ENGINE START STOP Switch

When the system detects the legal smart key and the brake pedal is released, press the ENGINE START STOP switch to switch the power mode of vehicle, each time the ENGINE START STOP switch is pressed, the mode is switched once (OFF - ACC - ON - START).

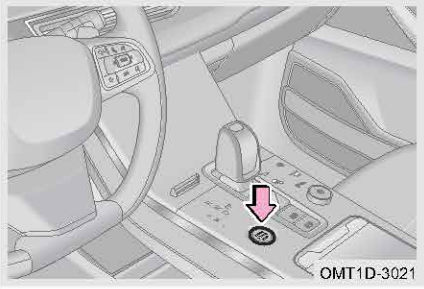


OMT1A-3020

OFF mode: All electrical appliances are turned off.

ACC mode: Part of electrical appliances can be used.

ON mode: All electrical appliances can be used.


OMT1D-3021

START mode: When vehicle power source is turned to ACC/ON mode, depress the brake pedal and transmission gear is in P, vehicle power is switched to START mode and the engine can be started by pressing the ENGINE START STOP switch.

READ

- The interior designs are different depending on the configuration of the vehicle. Please refer to the actual vehicle.
- If ENGINE START STOP switch is not pressed properly, vehicle power mode can not be switched or engine may be not started.

CAUTION

- When engine is not running, switch the vehicle power mode to OFF mode to prevent the battery from discharging.
- When engine is running, if smart key is removed, engine will not turn off automatically, anti-theft horn sounds 6 times and meter displays "Smart Key Not Detected".
- When engine is running, if shift lever is shifted to R/N/D, turn off the engine and vehicle power will be switched to ACC mode other than OFF mode. Shift the lever to P, vehicle power will be switched to ON mode, and press ENGINE START STOP switch again to switch it to OFF mode.

Auto power off function

When engine is not running, if vehicle power is switched to ON mode for 1 hour or more, vehicle power will be automatically switched to OFF mode (shift lever of vehicle with automatic transmission is shifted into P), this function cannot completely prevent battery from being discharged.

Electric Steering Column Lock (Vehicle with Manual Transmission)

Turn engine start stop switch to OFF mode, vehicle speed is 0 and engine speed is 0, electric steering column lock is locked.

Place the smart key in vehicle and press engine start stop switch. When engine start stop switch switches to ACC/ON mode, electric steering column lock unlocks automatically.

In some cases, such as when vehicle is stopped on a hill, there is a large stress between lock pin and steering column, and lock pin may be struck, at this time:

If electric steering column lock does not unlock successfully, perform corresponding operations according to prompt information of "ESCL locked, Turn Steering Wheel Press Engine Start/Stop Button Again" on instrument cluster.

⚠ CAUTION

When engine start stop switch switches to OFF mode from ON, if fortifying is not set immediately or fortifying is not successful, electric steering column lock cannot lock. To activate electric steering column lock function again, it is necessary to accelerate vehicle to more than 5 km/h and turn engine start stop switch to OFF mode, realizing vehicle anti-theft.

⚠ WARNING

- If electric steering column lock still cannot be unlocked successfully and engine cannot be started, contact the Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- If electric steering column lock cannot be unlocked, attempt to shake steering wheel for several times and then press engine start stop switch. Do not forcibly turn it.

4-2. Starting and Turning off Engine

Normal Starting and Turning off

Before starting engine

Step 1: Check surroundings of vehicle before getting in;

Step 2: Adjust seat position, seatback angle, head restraint height and steering wheel angle;

Step 3: Adjust angles of the inside and outside rear view mirrors;

Step 4: Turn off any unnecessary lights and electrical appliances;

Step 5: Fasten the seat belts;

Step 6: Confirm that the parking brake is applied;

Step 7: Shift the shift lever to P;

Step 8: Vehicle power is switched to ON mode, check if malfunction indicator and other indicators on meter are normal; if they are abnormal, please go to Chery authorized service station immediately for inspection and repair.

Starting engine

Smart key is carried on body or put it into vehicle, and it can be detected normally:

Step 1: Shift the shift lever to P;

Step 2: Switch vehicle power to ACC/ON mode;

Step 3: Depress brake pedal and press ENGINE START STOP switch to start engine.

READ
When operating ENGINE START STOP switch, one short, firm press is enough.

After starting engine

Engine idling is controlled by electronic control system. When engine is started, high speed can help to increase engine temperature, this is normal. After engine temperature increases, speed will automatically drop down to normal speed. If not, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair.

⚠ WARNING

Exhaust gas contains harmful substance which may lead to a serious health hazard when inhaled. Use the following methods to avoid inhaling exhaust gas:

- Do not run the engine for a long time in an unventilated area, such as in a garage, etc.
- When running engine in a ventilated area, someone should control engine in vehicle, switch air conditioning to outside mode, and set high blower speed.

Turning off engine

Step 1: Stop the vehicle and apply parking brake;

Step 2: Shift the shift lever to P, press ENGINE START STOP switch to turn off the engine;

Step 3: Check that engine is turned off.

⚠ CAUTION

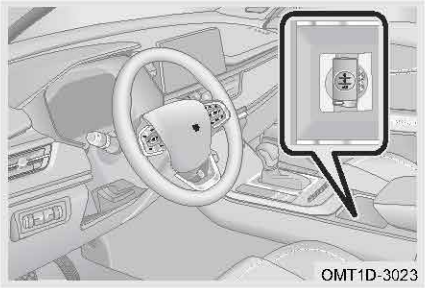
- Do not depress accelerator pedal before engine is turned off.
- After driving at a high speed for a long time, engine temperature will be high. Do not turn off engine immediately when stopping vehicle. Allow the engine to idle for several minutes, and then turn off engine after its temperature drops. Otherwise, engine may be damaged.

Starting and Turning off in Emergency

Starting engine in emergency

When smart key battery is low or signal is seriously interfered, ENGINE START STOP function will not work normally. In this case, start engine according to following steps:

■Starting engine in emergency (type A)

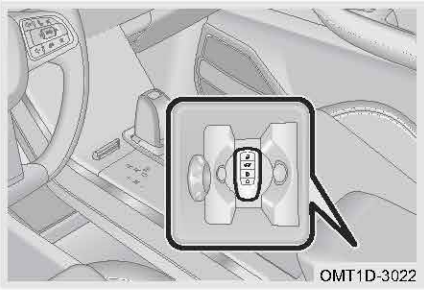


Step 1: Lay smart key in auxiliary fascia console cup holder (as shown in figure) with front side facing up; do not depress brake pedal at this time;

Step 2: Switch vehicle power to ACC/ ON mode, depress the brake pedal;

Step 3: Press ENGINE START STOP switch to start the engine.

■ Starting engine in emergency (type B)



Step 1: Lay smart key in auxiliary fascia console storage box (as shown in figure) with front side facing up; do not depress brake pedal at this time;

Step 2: Switch vehicle power to ACC/ ON mode, depress the brake pedal;

Step 3: Press ENGINE START STOP switch to start the engine.

Note: For vehicle with automatic transmission, vehicle power is switched to ACC mode, when the engine cannot be started by pressing brake pedal, long press ENGINE START STOP switch for 15 seconds or more, system will ignore brake pedal signal and engine also can start at the same time (it is not recommended to use this function to start driving again unless special circumstances occur).

READ

The interior designs are different depending on the configuration of the vehicle. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

CAUTION

During using vehicle daily, do not place smart key into auxiliary fascia console storage box with "key" mark (because the smart key that has sufficient battery power into auxiliary fascia console storage box may trigger instrument alarm "Smart key not detected", "Verify successfully, start ready", so there is misjudgement for owner.

Turning off engine in emergency

When vehicle systems are normal during traveling, if engine has to be stopped in case of an emergency, perform as follows:

Method 1: Shortly and continuously press ENGINE START STOP switch 3 times or more within 2 seconds.

Method 2: Press and hold ENGINE START STOP switch for 3 seconds or more.

Adaptive Engine Control System

If the battery terminal is removed and reconnected, the vehicle power is switched to ON mode, and vehicle power will be switched to OFF mode after waiting for 15 seconds before starting the engine.

Abnormal phenomena (such as, engine shaking or unsmooth starting off) may occur in early driving stage, which is a normal phenomenon that engine control system is learning to adapt to engine again.

Particulate Filter (GPF) (if Equipped)

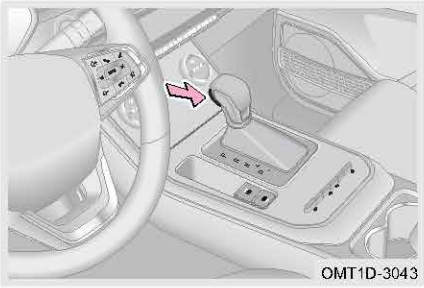
GPF can capture particulate emissions from exhaust gas to reduce the effect of particulate emissions of vehicle. When particulate emissions from the GPF accumulate to a certain extent, the system will regenerate GPF with a specific strategy.

4-3. Transmission

Automatic Transmission

Automatic transmission (CVT25)

The automatic transmission (CVT25) belongs to the electronically controlled mechanical automatic transmission with manual and automatic shift modes.



Operation method

Step 1: Depress the brake pedal completely and press button on shift lever, then shift the shift lever from P to D;

Step 2: Release the parking brake manually or automatically and release the brake pedal to drive the vehicle slowly.

Automatic transmission (7DCT)

The automatic transmission (7DCT) belongs to the electronically controlled automatic transmission with manual and automatic shifting modes.

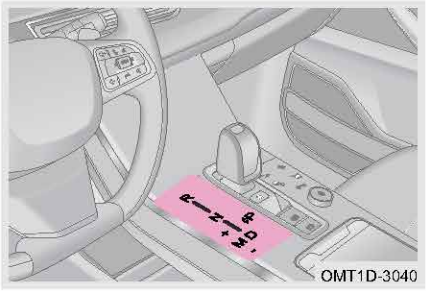
Operation method

Step 1: Depress the brake pedal completely, then shift the shift lever from P to D;

Step 2: Release the parking brake manually or automatically and release the brake pedal to drive the vehicle slowly.

READ
Press P button on shift lever to shift to P. Push the shift lever forward and backward to shift to other positions (R, N, D).

Gear position introduction



During the operation, the driver can choose the automatic mode (P, R, N, D) and the manual mode M (+, -). The selected gear position will display the corresponding gear information on the information display area in instrument cluster.

Automatic mode: When the transmission gear is in D, vehicle upshifts and downshifts automatically according to speed. All are done without manual intervention.

Manual mode: When the transmission gear is in D, push to left to enter manual mode, push forward to upshift by one gear and push backward to downshift by one gear.

The following information will help you understand purpose and operation procedures of different gears to make a right choice according to actual demand during operation.

Instrument cluster display the currently selected gear position information (in manual mode or the current gear position).on-board computer displays arrow and target gear according to current conditions to prompt user to perform a reasonable shift operation(if equipped):

" ↑ " prompts you to perform an upshift operation.

" ↓ " prompts you to perform an downshift operation.

Gear Range		Function
P (Park)		This is park position. Drive wheels are mechanically locked. Engine can be started.
R (Reverse)		This is a reverse position. Back-up lights will come on and parking assist system will operate.
N (Neutral)		This is a neutral position. It is used for short time idling stop.
D (Forward Drive)		This is a forward driving position. Automatically shifts up and down among forward drive gears according to engine load and vehicle speed.
M (Manual mode)	+	Push shift lever toward + once, transmission will raise one gear.
	-	Push shift lever toward - once, transmission will lower one gear.

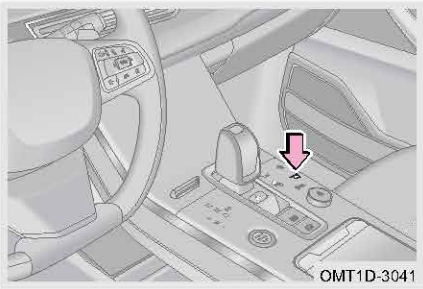
⚠ CAUTION

- In manual mode, when the speed does not change, kick-down operation is allowed, and automatic up-shifting is not allowed.
- Never shift in P position when the vehicle is not stopped steadily. This may lead to abnormal sound or damage to the transmission.
- When engine stalls, do not coast vehicle in N. Otherwise, the transmission will be damaged.
- Do not shift the shift lever out of D while the vehicle is moving forward. Otherwise, the transmission may be damaged seriously.
- Do not shift the shift lever out of R while the vehicle is moving backward. Otherwise, the transmission may be damaged seriously.
- When shifting the shift lever out of P, it is necessary to depress the brake pedal first to stop the vehicle steadily, and then perform shifting among each gear position. Otherwise shifting mechanism will be damaged.
- When vehicle malfunctions occur due to insufficient battery, the shift lever cannot be shifted from P even if you depress the brake pedal. Please go to Chery authorized service station immediately for inspection and repair.
- In manual mode, when engine speed reaches to the highest speed, it shifts up automatically; when engine speed is excessively low, it shifts down automatically; when vehicle brakes and slows down, it shifts down automatically.
- In manual mode, up-shifting and down-shifting operations must be performed by pushing shift lever according to engine speed and vehicle speed. If the requirements are not met, the transmission will not perform the gear shifting operation.
- When parking vehicle on a slope, parking brake must be applied first, and the shift lever is shifted to P. After starting on a slope, first shift the shift lever out of P, then release parking brake for driving.
- When trying to make vehicle free from a stuck or wade, it is recommended to select lower gear manually to get larger wheel drive force and avoid water on road entering exhaust pipeline.
- Within the allowed engine speed range, transmission will lock at the gear position you selected manually. When vehicle is driving on a long downhill road, it is recommended to select lower gear manually to control vehicle speed better, and reduce vehicle braking force attenuation because brake pedal is depressed for a long time or frequently.

⚠ WARNING

- Never tow the vehicle for a long distance or at high speed. Raise drive wheels or disconnect propeller shaft when towing.
- When the transmission is in N, make sure parking brake is applied or brake pedal is depressed, otherwise an accident may occur.

Driving mode



Click "MODE" switch, it can be switched among NORMAL mode (if equipped)/ SPORT mode /ECO mode circularly.

NORMAL mode is the standard mode; ECO mode is an economic mode which can improve vehicle fuel economy; SPORT mode improves vehicle handling, controllability and power performance. You can choose according to different road conditions

After the driver switches to driving mode, this operation will be memorized. Last operating status of driver will be memorized by default after vehicle is powered on next time. This function is not standard. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

READ

- The interior designs are different depending on the configuration of the vehicle. Please refer to the actual vehicle.
- When the driving mode is switched, corresponding theme color of instrument cluster can be switched. This function is not standard. Please refer to the actual vehicle.
- Adaptive Cruise System (ACC) is used for gentle acceleration in ECO mode, while Adaptive Cruise System (ACC) is used for faster acceleration in SPORT mode. This function is not standard. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

paddle Shift Switch (if equipped)

When transmission gear is in D, move paddle shift switch once to enter temporary manual mode.

1 Under manual mode/temporary manual mode, move paddle shift switch "-" once to downshift by one gear.

2 Under manual mode/temporary manual mode, move paddle shift switch "+" once to upshift by one gear.

READ

Under manual mode/temporary manual mode, up-shifting and down-shifting operations must be performed by moving paddle shift switch according to engine speed and vehicle speed. If the requirements are not met, the transmission will not perform the gear shifting operation.

■ Temporary manual mode will be exited in the following conditions:

1. Move paddle shift switch "+" and "-" at the same time to exit temporary manual mode.
2. If addle shift switch is not moved within a certain period of time (15 seconds) and transmission gear is in D, temporary manual mode is exited.

Fail-safe mode

When malfunction occurs in transmission system, fail-safe mode will be automatically activated, at the same time "" yellow indicator in instrument cluster remains on; transmission cannot operate normally, and vehicle will slow down and be driven at low speed.

CAUTION

Long distance driving is not allowed in fail-safe mode. Otherwise, transmission may be damaged, go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

Shift to P automatically (7 DCT)

When vehicle stops with speed higher than 15 km/h, transmission is in R or D, driver side door is opened and brake pedal is not depressed, it will shift to P automatically. If the door cannot be closed due to damaged driver side door, the driver can automatically shift into P in the system, and then shift the shift lever to R or D, and the vehicle will run normally.

Transmission self-learning operation specification (7 DCT)

If the battery is disconnected immediately after the vehicle power is switched to OFF mode, gear position loss will occur after reconnecting the battery, at this time, it is necessary to perform shift drum and clutch position self-learning, and then vehicle can be driven normally.

Step 1: Connect battery and turn vehicle power to ON mode;

Step 2: Firmly depress brake pedal and hold for 30 seconds or more until P is displayed in instrument cluster, at this time, transmission self-learning operation is completed;

Step 3: If P is not displayed, disconnect battery negative and repeat steps 1 and 2 until P is displayed in instrument cluster.

READ

It is recommended to go to Chery authorized service station to be operated by after-sales personnel.

4-4. Intelligent Timely All Wheel Drive System (AWD)

Intelligent Timely All Wheel Drive System (AWD) (If Equipped)

The vehicle is set into 6 driving modes: NORMAL/SPORT/ECO/SNOW/MUD/OFF ROAD. The all wheel drive system runs intelligently in all modes, realizing automatic switching between two wheel drive and four wheel drive in real time. You can also manually set the driving mode based on the judgment of the road conditions. OFF ROAD mode will help you make vehicle free from troubles in complex road conditions.

Note: When Electronic Stability Program System (ESP) is turned off, even if SNOW/MUD/OFF ROAD mode is selected, the vehicle's limiting slippage and traction ability are reduced.

CAUTION

Avoid long-term driving on sandy or muddy roads, or long-term tire slippage. This operation may trigger the overheating protection function of the all wheel drive system, then yellow indicator light "" on the instrument cluster is always on, and the all wheel drive state is exited and switched to two wheel drive to protect the drive train; Under safe conditions, stop as soon as possible to dissipate heat, and wait for a few minutes until the overheat protection function is exited (it is recommended to wait for a few more minutes after the alarm is cleared to make the all wheel drive system temperature lower and the performance recovery better) before entering the all wheel drive system again. If the alarm cannot be cleared for a long time, please contact Chery authorized service station.

Intelligent Timely All Wheel Drive System (AWD) indicator

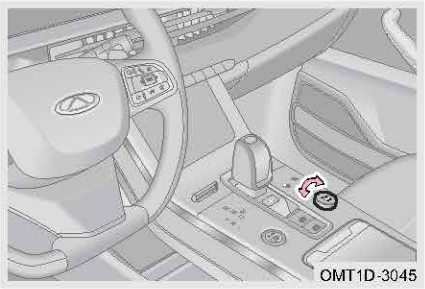
When a temporary failure occurs, yellow indicator light "" on the instrument cluster is always on; When a permanent failure occurs, red indicator light "" on the instrument cluster is always on. At the same time, the instrument cluster displays text "All Wheel Drive system Malfunction, Contact the Service Station".

READ

- When the all wheel drive system failure occurs, the Electronic Stability Program System (ESP) issues an alarm and degrades, and only the Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) is retained.
- When the yellow indicator light "" on the instrument cluster is always on, the vehicle will maintain two wheel drive operation to ensure normal driving.

Driving Mode

Driving mode (method 1)


OMT1D-3045

Step 1: Turn vehicle power to ON mode, and keep the vehicle stationary or ensure safe driving;

Step 2: Rotate the " MODE " knob to switch among NORMAL/SPORT/ECO/SNOW/MUD/OFF ROAD; The corresponding mode icon of the instrument cluster comes on and the corresponding theme mode is switched. At the same time, a voice reminder is accompanied to remind you that the driving mode has been successfully switched.

Driving mode (method 2)

OMT1D-3044

Step 1: Turn vehicle power to ON mode, and keep the vehicle stationary or ensure safe driving;

Step 2: Rotate the "MODE" knob, audio head unit pops up the driving mode screen;

Step 3: Click NORMAL/SPORT/ECO/SNOW/MUD/OFF ROAD on driving mode screen; The corresponding mode icon of the instrument cluster comes on, and the corresponding theme mode is switched. At the same time, a voice reminder is accompanied to remind you that the driving mode has been successfully switched.

After the driver switches to driving mode, this operation will be memorized. Last operating status of driver will be memorized by default after vehicle is powered on next time. This function is not standard. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

Introduction of driving mode

The following information will help you understand purpose of different driving modes and can be selected according to different road conditions.

Driving Mode	Function
NORMAL Mode	The NORMAL mode integrates vehicle power performance and economy, and is suitable for various road surfaces.
ECO Mode	The ECO mode improves the vehicle fuel economy, and is suitable for flat and hard roads such as urban roads and paved roads.
SPORT Mode	The SPORT mode improves the vehicle power performance, and achieves a higher level of response speed and driving experiences. It is suitable for flat roads with fewer vehicles and wide driving range (such as: highways).
SNOW Mode	The SNOW mode is suitable for hard but smooth roads, including the roads covered by the snow, ice, grass, gravel, etc.
MUD Mode	The MUD mode is suitable for roads that are muddy and uneven, with a layer of smooth shallow mud or ruts.
OFF ROAD Mode	The OFF ROAD mode improves the vehicle acceleration performance and trafficability. It is suitable for off road on mountain roads and making vehicle free from troubles.

READ

- In SNOW/MUD/OFF ROAD mode, idling stop-start system is turned off by default.
- When the windows and moon roof glass are open, rain may wet the interior devices and cause damages to the vehicle. When driving in off road mode, be sure to keep the windows and moon roof glass closed.
- Adaptive Cruise Control System (ACC) accelerates gently in the vehicle ECO /SNOW /MUD mode, while Adaptive Cruise Control System (ACC) accelerates faster in the vehicle SPORT/OFF ROAD mode.

Before off road driving

It is necessary to learn and master how to control the vehicle in different off road situations and safely drive through uneven off road areas before off road driving. The abilities and behaviors required for off road driving are different from those of driving on normal roads. The safety of the driver and occupants depends on the knowledge, skills and cautions of the driver.

⚠ WARNING

- Off road driving should always avoid driving diagonally on slopes.
- Always keep the vehicle speed and driving style suitable for the current off road conditions.
- Before driving into an unknown off road section, please walk carefully to survey the route.
- Do not drive too fast (especially when turning) or perform extreme driving operations.
- The vehicle speed and driving style should be always matched to the load, visibility, off road and weather conditions.
- Be sure to drive at an appropriate speed according to the actual off road conditions, road conditions, traffic and weather.
- During a rollover, people who are not wearing seat belts may be more likely to die than those wearing seat belts.
- Luggage and other items transported on the roof will further increase the center of gravity and increase the risk of a rollover.
- When the vehicle center of gravity is high, the risk of a rollover during driving is greater than that of "normal" passenger vehicles that are not suitable for off road driving.
- If the vehicle raises, the front wheels must be straightened. If the vehicle comes into contact with the road in an impact manner, the vehicle may roll over.
- Constant Speed Cruise System (CCS) is used for road driving and is completely unsuitable for off road driving. It may even bring dangers if it is used for off road driving.
- Be especially careful and predictable when driving off road. When driving too fast or operation error, it may cause serious injuries and damage to the vehicle.
- Do not drive through river bank, ramps or slopes at excessively high speed. This may raise the vehicle, making it unable to turn and lose control of the vehicle.
- Do not choose unsafe routes and take risks that put the driver and occupants in danger. When you are in doubt about the route safety, return and choose another route.
- Even if off road driving seems easy, it may actually be difficult and full of risks, and it may also bring dangers to the driver and occupants. It is best to walk in advance to tour off road sections.
- Even off road sections that seem to be not dangerous can be full of risks. It is not easy to recognize pits, grooves, dell, ravine, obstacles, shallows, and soft muddy ground which may be completely or partially covered by

⚠ WARNING

water, grass, or scattered branches on the ground. Walk to tour off road sections if necessary.

- When the vehicle is stopped with tilting on a slope, do not leave the vehicle with door facing downhill. The center of gravity formed by the combination of the vehicle and its load (occupants and loads) may shift, causing the vehicle to roll over and roll down the slope. Leave the vehicle steadily with the door facing uphill every time.
- The off road sections that seem to be not dangerous can be full of risks. It is not easy to recognize pits, grooves, dell, ravine, obstacles, shallows, and soft muddy ground which may be completely or partially covered by water, grass, or scattered branches on the ground. When driving through this off road sections, accidents, serious injuries may occur and cause vehicle failures.

Stuck vehicle

If repeatedly driving forwards and backwards is performed for traction, the vehicle may continue to sink due to a wrong operation, and you can only request external assistance.

■ When the wheels do not rotate well

Step 1: Dig out all the wheels carefully, and then confirm that no other components are buried in the sand;

Step 2: Shift the shift lever to R;

Step 3: Depress accelerator pedal carefully and reverse along its own lane;

Step 4: If it doesn't work, put branches, floor mat or sackcloth close to the front of the tire to improve the ground adhesion and driving force of tire.

■ Repeatedly driving forwards and backwards for traction

Step 1: Straighten the steering wheel;

Step 2: Reverse until the wheels just start to slip;

Step 3: Immediately shift to 1st gear and drive forwards until the wheels start to slip again;

Step 4: Repeat this backward and forward driving operation until the rotations of wheels are enough to make the vehicle move backwards and forwards repeatedly for traction.

⚠ WARNING

- Do not let the wheels slip for a long time, otherwise the vehicle will continue to sink;
- People should never stay in front of or behind the vehicle, especially when trying to drive and move a stuck vehicle.
- If a stuck vehicle moves suddenly, it may crush people staying in front of or behind the vehicle.
- Sleeping wheels may cause stones, branches, wooden blocks, or other objects under the wheel to accelerate sharply, which may cause fatal injuries.

After off road driving

1. Remove the towing eyelet and tire chains if necessary.
2. Turn off OFF ROAD mode.
3. Remove heavy dirt from the radiator grille and vehicle deck board.
4. Inspect the engine compartment and check if the dirt affects engine operation.
5. Clean the turn signal light, lighting devices, license plate and all window glasses.
6. Check the tires, shock strut and axles for damage, and remove the large dirt, stones and foreign objects embedded in the tire pattern.
7. Check the vehicle deck board and remove all objects stuck in the brakes, wheels, chassis, exhaust devices and engine, such as branches, leaves or wooden blocks. If damage or leakage is found, please contact Chery authorized service station immediately.

⚠ WARNING

- Objects stuck under the vehicle deck board are dangerous. After each off road driving, it is necessary to check if there is any object stuck under the vehicle deck board.
- Do not drive if there are objects stuck in the vehicle deck board, brakes, wheels, chassis, exhaust devices or engine.
- Flammable materials such as dry leaves or branches may catch fire when they come into contact with hot components. A fire may cause serious injury.
- The stuck objects may cause damage to fuel pipes, brakes, seals, and other chassis components. It may lead to accidents and cause the vehicle to run out of control.

4-5. Steering System

Electric Power Steering System (EPS)

Electric Power Steering System (EPS) uses torque generated by motor as power source of steering system, instead of assisting method using in general vehicle, that is, hydraulic pump is driven by engine.

Electric Power Steering System (EPS) self-learning

If the vehicle battery is powered off and reconnecting or starting, due to the initialization of electric steering system angle, "" yellow indicator in instrument cluster blinks, turn the steering wheel left and right to the limit position to complete the angle reset, and the "" yellow indicator in instrument cluster turns off.

⚠ CAUTION

- Frequent handling and rotation of steering wheel over long periods of time may damage the mechanism in the Electric Power Steering System (EPS).
- It is forbidden to turn the steering wheel frequently and quickly at idling to prevent the system from overheating. If the system overheats, heavy steering will occur, which is normal. Stop rotating the steering wheel and switch the vehicle power to OFF/ACC mode until the system cools down.

Electric Power Steering System (EPS) indicator

When there is fault, "" yellow indicator in instrument cluster comes on.

⚠ WARNING

After Electric Power Steering System (EPS) is disabled, although the vehicle still has the conventional steering capability, it should be driven with caution. At this time, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

Steering force mode

OMT1D-3051

Electric Power Steering System (EPS) is equipped with two steering force modes (SPORT/COMFORT). The default steering force mode is comfort mode when the vehicle first works. Compared with the comfortable mode, steering force of sport mode is reduced and the hand feels calm.

READ

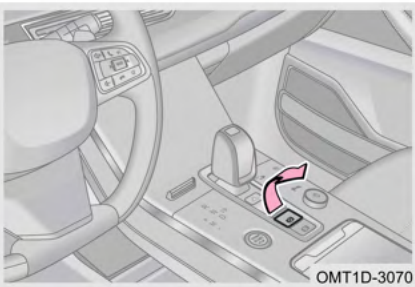
The steering force mode can be correlated with the driving mode. After the correlation, the steering force is the movement in the vehicle SPORT mode, while the steering force is the comfort in the vehicle NORMAL mode (if equipped)/ECO mode. After disassociation, steering force can be set to SPORT/COMFORT separately.

4-6. Brake System

Electric Parking Brake (EPB) System

Electric Parking Brake (EPB) system is a technology that integrates temporary braking during driving and long-time braking after stopping, and implements parking brake in a method of electronic control. This technology replaces the traditional handbrake.

Usage method


OMT1D-3070

■ Applying parking brake manually

When vehicle power is switched to ON mode, or engine starts and vehicle is stopping, pull up the electric parking brake button, " Ⓟ " red indicator in instrument cluster and electric parking brake button indicator remains on, indicating parking brake function has been turned on.

Vehicle power is switched to OFF mode, and parking brake function can be applied automatically by Electric Parking Brake (EPB) system.

■ Releasing parking brake manually

With engine starts or vehicle power is switched to ON mode, depress the brake pedal and press electric parking brake button manually, " Ⓟ " red

indicator in instrument cluster and electric parking brake button indicator will turn off, indicating parking brake function has been released.

■ Releasing parking brake automatically

Fasten driver's seat belt and close driver side door. Depress accelerator pedal with shift lever in D or R on flat road to release electric parking brake automatically, and "Ⓟ" red indicator in instrument cluster goes off.

When vehicle stops on a slope, depress accelerator pedal harder to shift to D or R. When driving force is greater than slipping force, electric parking can release automatically.

READ

- When towing vehicle, it is necessary to release parking brake, and transmission is in neutral.
- The interior designs are different depending on the configuration of the vehicle. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

CAUTION

- Electric Parking Brake (EPB) system and Automatic Parking system (-AUTO HOLD) can not be used when vehicle battery is loss. Jumper cables can be used to start the engine (refer to "Vehicle Distress Handling" for details).
- While depressing brake pedal and releasing or applying parking brake, brake pedal may push slightly up or down, please press the brake tightly.
- When performing automatic releasing of electric parking brake, fasten the driver's seat belt and close the driver side door. Failure to do so may cause the automatic releasing conditions of parking brake cannot be satisfied.
- When enabling and releasing electric parking brake, "whooshing" sound may be heard from rear part of vehicle. This is the working sound emitted by parking brake. It is normal and take it easy.
- If vehicle coasts after stopping within a short period, system will increase parking brake force automatically to hold it for safety. When brake force increasing, system makes operation sound. This is normal.
- Engine starts or the vehicle power is switched to ON mode, when parking brake can not be released manually by depressing brake pedal, you can depress accelerator pedal and press the electric parking brake button to release parking brake, it is only used when parking brake can not be released manually by depressing brake pedal, pay attention to safety when using. Please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

⚠ WARNING

To avoid vehicle accident movement, when stopping or leaving vehicle, and after Electric Parking Brake (EPB) system operates, "Ⓟ" red indicator in instrument cluster and electric parking brake button indicator turn off after they come on for a certain time, check whether "Ⓟ" red indicator in instrument cluster and electric parking brake button indicator come on to ensure electric parking brake is properly applied.

Emergency braking function

If foot brake fails, pull up the electric parking brake button continuously to forcibly apply brake by parking brake. In this process, "Ⓟ" red indicator in instrument cluster blinks. Release the button to exit emergency braking.

⚠ WARNING

- When emergency braking function is activated, it will drone. This is normal.
- When applying emergency braking, electric parking brake will apply brake at constant deceleration which is deviated from driver's desired deceleration and braking distance will be different.
- Use this function cautiously during normal driving. When driving, other passengers should not touch button accidentally. Otherwise, it may cause an accident.
- Emergency braking function can only be used in case of emergency such as foot brake failure or brake pedal stuck. Electronic Stability Control (ESP) system and its components cannot exceed road traction physical limit. Turn on emergency braking function when driving on curved road, dangerous road, heavy traffic road or in severe weather may lead in drifting, side slipping or pulling over, be careful not to cause an accident.

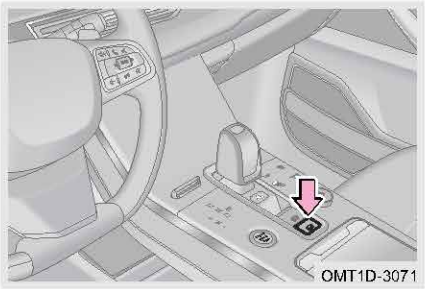
Electric parking emergency releasing

When Electric Parking Brake (EPB) system operates, press electric parking brake button and depress and hold brake pedal, and vehicle power is switched to OFF mode, electric parking is released in emergency. It is recommended to use the electronic parking system only in rescue trailers or rare situations.

Automatic Parking System (AUTO HOLD)

Automatic Parking System (AUTO HOLD) is used to prevent vehicle from rolling when vehicle is stationary and starts off.

Usage method



■ Automatic parking operation conditions

Engine is started, driver side door is closed properly and driver seat belt is fastened.

■ Turning on automatic parking

When automatic parking conditions are met, press automatic parking button, indicator on button remains on, indicating that vehicle has turned on automatic parking function.

■ Activating automatic parking function

When automatic parking conditions are met, press automatic parking button, indicator on button remains on, indicating that vehicle has turned on automatic parking function.

When automatic parking function is turned on, depress brake pedal, vehicle is changed to stationary state from movement, then automatic parking function is activated, "Ⓟ"or"Ⓐ" green indicator in instrument cluster remains on.

Depress brake pedal when vehicle is stationary, and the automatic parking function is turned on at the same time and the condition of automatic parking is met, then automatic parking function is activated, " Ⓟ "or" Ⓐ " green indicator in instrument cluster remains on.

■ Turning off automatic parking

When the automatic parking function is turned on, press the automatic parking button to turn off automatic parking function. The indicator on the automatic parking button turns off, indicating that the vehicle has exited the automatic parking function.

When automatic parking function is activated, press automatic parking button to turn off automatic parking function, "Ⓟ"or"Ⓐ" green indicator in instrument cluster and indicator on automatic parking button turn off, indicating that vehicle has exited automatic parking function and switched to parking brake function.

■ Automatic parking release function:

Way to release automatic parking is the same as that of electric parking brake, including manual release and automatic release.

READ

- The interior designs are different depending on the configuration of the vehicle. Please refer to the actual vehicle.
- According to the configuration of the vehicle, the automatic parking indicator displays different. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

- Turn off automatic parking function before driving into wash room.
- Always park vehicle correctly according to safety regulations and take care to avoid hurting yourself and pedestrians.
- If accelerator pedal is depressed very slowly, automatic parking release delays. This is normal.
- When automatic parking function is activated, open driver side door or unfasten driver side seat belt, automatic parking will switch to electrical parking.
- When automatic parking function is enabled, open driver side door or unfasten driver side seat belt to exit automatic parking function, close the door or fasten the belt again to activate the function again.
- After automatic parking is enabled, the automatic parking system will automatically stop the vehicle from the state of motion to a complete stop by foot brake, but the transmission gear is still in D or R. It is recommended to shift to N for a short time and shift to P for a long time.

⚠ WARNING

To avoid vehicle accidentally moving, in the state of automatic parking, confirm shift position before depressing accelerator pedal to start.

Vacuum Booster

The vacuum booster is controlled by engine vacuum and it works only when the engine is running. Therefore, do not coast your vehicle with engine off.

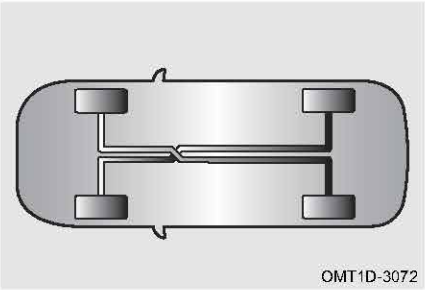
⚠ WARNING

Do not coast your vehicle with engine off while driving downhill. To achieve better braking effect, shift to low gear before driving downhill.

If the vacuum booster does not work because vehicle is being towed or malfunctioning, brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual to compensate booster braking effect.

Under the condition of normal temperature, special warm working condition of engine idling state within 15 seconds after vehicle starts (the temperature is lower, the time is longer), in order to quickly heat and activate three-way catalysts, improve waste gas conversion efficiency, at the same time, the condition is helpful to restore vacuum degree building of brake vacuum booster after vehicle is parked for a long time (such as overnight), which can achieve the optimal condition of vehicle, therefore you are advised to develop the habit of idling running at least 15 seconds after starting the vehicle and then driving.

Foot Brake



The brake system adopts X type arrangement, double circuit brake system; The system is a hydraulic system with two independent subsystems. If one of the subsystems fails, the other system can still perform brake function. However, the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual and the braking distance will increase, and the brake system malfunction indicator remains on.

> ⚠ WARNING
>
> Do not drive vehicle under conditions in which only one brake system works. Please go to Chery authorized service station as soon as possible.

Brake system indicator

When there is fault, "" red indicator in instrument cluster remains on.

> ⚠ WARNING
>
> When there is fault in brake system, check the brake fluid level, add brake fluid when it is lower than MIN line. If reason is unclear, go to Chery authorized service station immediately.

Precautions for brake system

1. If there is a continuous shaking or vibration to the steering wheel while braking, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
2. When driving downhill, shift to a low gear to make full use of engine braking effect and avoid continuous use of brakes. Failure to do so may cause that brake overheats and braking distance will become longer, and the brake may even temporarily lose its effectiveness in a serious case.
3. Brake system operating sound may be heart sometimes, which is normal. But metal-friction or whistling sounds for a long time, brake linings may be seriously worn. Please go to Chery authorized service station for replacement immediately.
4. The new brake linings must be break-in to reach optimal brake effect. Braking effect in the first 200 km is not optimal. In this case, depress brake pedal more firmly to compensate braking effect.

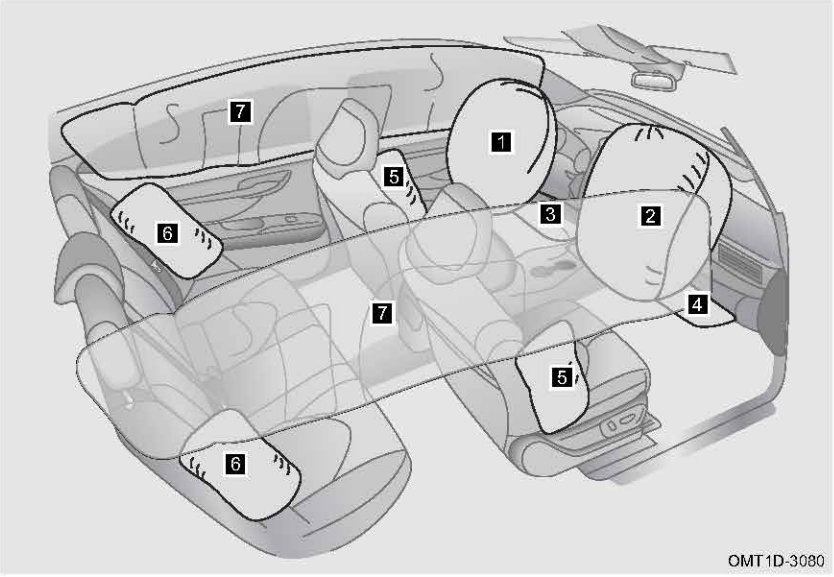
5. A wet brake may cause abnormal vehicle deceleration or pull to one side when braking. Depress brake pedal slightly to test effectiveness of brake. After driving through deep water, keep a safe vehicle speed and depress brake pedal slightly until braking function is restored.
6. Wear condition of brake linings largely depends on its working conditions and driving style. For vehicles mainly used in city traffic, frequent starting and stopping will make working condition of brake linings worsen. Therefore, please go to Chery authorized service station according to specified maintenance mileage to check thickness of brake linings or replace it as needed.

4-7. Airbag (SRS)

Airbag (SRS)

In severe frontal/side collision, when deployment conditions are met, the airbags (SRS) deploy and work together with seat belts to protect occupants in vehicle. Airbags (SRS) can distribute impact force more evenly to upper parts of occupants' body, so their body move slowly even stop, thus reducing the risk of occupants and driver injury. Automatically unlocks doors, illuminates interior lights, and turns on hazard warning lights after the airbag is (SRS) is deployed.

Airbag (SRS) positions



1 Driver seat frontal airbag

2 Front passenger frontal airbag

3 Driver knee airbag (if equipped)

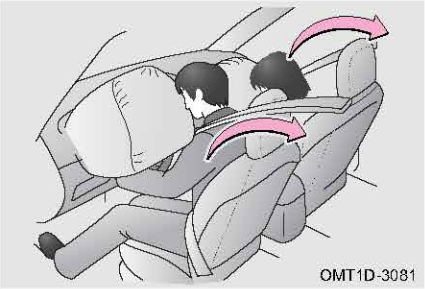
4 Front passenger knee airbag (if equipped)

5 Front seat side airbag (if equipped)

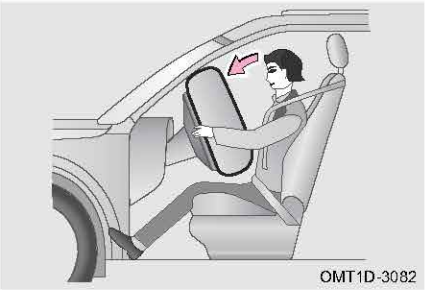
6 Second row seat side airbag (if equipped)

7 Curtain side airbag (if equipped)

Using airbag (SRS) correctly



In an event of a severe frontal collision, driver frontal airbag, front passenger frontal airbag, driver knee airbag (if equipped), front passenger knee airbag (if equipped) work together with seat belt to help reduce injuries to the head or chest of driver and front passenger caused by hitting the interior component (front passenger frontal airbag may be activated even if there is no occupant in passenger seat).



The airbag (SRS) works together with seat belt to protect safety of driver and passengers. However, airbag is not a substitute for seat belt. In addition, the airbag (SRS) will deploy only when the collision degree of vehicle reaches the design condition. In some collisions, seat belt is the only protective device. Wearing a seat belt during a collision can help reduce the risk of hitting objects inside the vehicle or being thrown out of the vehicle, and effectively protect the drivers and occupants. Therefore all persons in vehicle should wear seat belts correctly. Airbags (SRS) and seat belts can provide protection only for adults but are not designed to protect infants and young children.

The airbag (SRS) will generate considerable force at the moment of deployment. In order to avoid injury caused by deployment of the airbag (SRS), the driver and occupants must adopt the correct sitting posture, correctly wear the seat belt and adjust their seat position, never get too close to the airbag (SRS), such as sitting on the edge of the seat or tilting the body forward. For vehicles equipped with front seat side airbag (if equipped) and curtain side airbag (if equipped), make sure that the upper limb is sufficiently away from the vehicle side to avoid injury during deploying.

⚠ CAUTION

- The airbag (SRS) cannot protect the lower part of the occupant's body.
- The airbag (SRS) will quickly contract after deploying, which can ensure that forward vision of driver is not blocked.
- The related parts of airbag (SRS) will generate heat after deploying. Do not touch the related parts of airbag (SRS) immediately to avoid injury.
- The airbag (SRS) is a non-reusable device. Once the airbag (SRS) is deployed, the related parts of airbag (SRS) must be replaced.
- If the areas where the airbags (SRS) are stored, such as the steering wheel and instrument panel are damaged or cracked, please go to Chery authorized service station for replacement as soon as possible.
- The deployment and contraction of the airbag (SRS) is completed in a short period of time, and cannot protect against the impact of a second impact that may occur subsequently.
- The airbag (SRS) is neither designed for rear collisions, slight frontal collisions, nor for vehicle rolling over, and it does not work when the vehicle is braked in an emergency.
- The airbags (SRS) release some smoke and dust after deploying. For people with asthma or other respiratory problems, respiratory system could be stimulated. Therefore, all people in vehicle should get off as soon as possible, or open windows to breathe fresh air and seek medical treatment if necessary.

⚠ WARNING

- The seat cover should not block side airbag (if equipped) during using, as in the event of an accident, the side airbag (if equipped) will not pop up after inflating, which will reduce protection for passengers.
- A soft, dry cloth or cloth dampened with water must be used to clean the airbag (SRS). In order to avoid any fluid into the airbag (SRS), otherwise it may seriously affect the normal function of airbag (SRS).
- If there is water in vehicle, the airbag (SRS) may be damaged. Even if there is no collision at this time, it may cause the airbag to deploy accidentally. Turn off the engine immediately and disconnect the negative battery cable. Do not try to start the engine. Please contact Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

Airbag (SRS) indicators

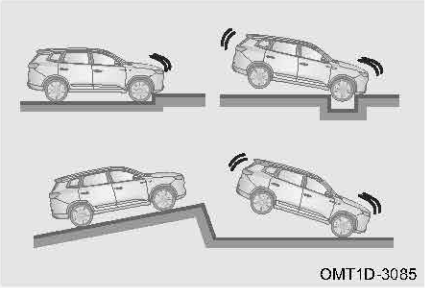
The " " red indicator on instrument cluster remains on when it is malfunctioning, which is used to alert the driver that airbag (SRS) is malfunctioning. Please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

Airbag (SRS) operating conditions

Deployment conditions of the airbag (SRS) do not depend on driving speed of vehicle, but depend on the object, collision direction and vehicle speed due to a collision. Airbags (SRS) may not deploy when the impact of collision is absorbed or dispersed into the body; However, the airbag (SRS) can sometimes operate depending on the impact condition in an accident. Therefore, deployment conditions of the airbag (SRS) should not be judged depending on the damaged condition of the vehicle.

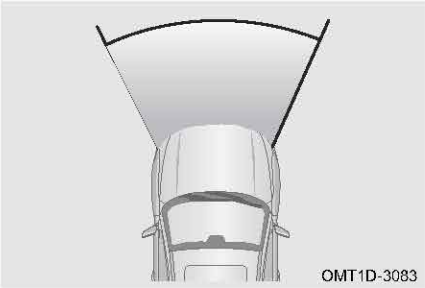
Even if the airbag (SRS) is not deployed, a collision may damage the airbag (SRS) in the vehicle. Airbag (SRS) may not operate properly if damaged, and it will not be able to protect you and other occupants in the event of another collision, resulting in accidents and personal injuries. In order to ensure that the airbag (SRS) can deploy properly in an event of collision, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

■ Conditions under which airbag (SRS) may deploy other than a collision



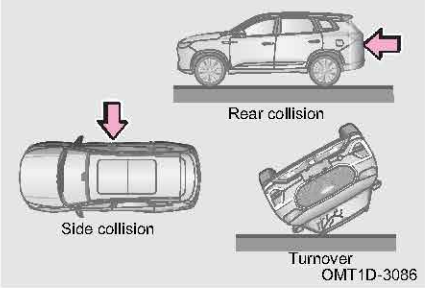
The driver frontal airbag and front passenger frontal airbag may deploy if a impact occurs to the underside of your vehicle.

■ Conditions under which airbag (SRS) may deploy in a collision

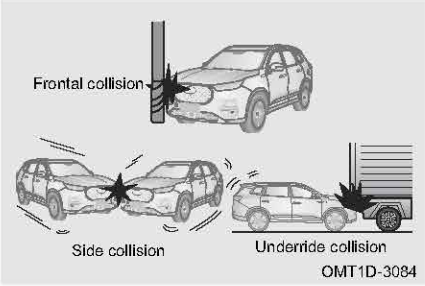


Operating conditions: In general, in an event of frontal collision, the driver frontal airbag, front passenger frontal airbag, driver knee airbag (if equipped), front passenger knee airbag (if equipped) will deploy if the deceleration of vehicle exceeds the designed threshold level.

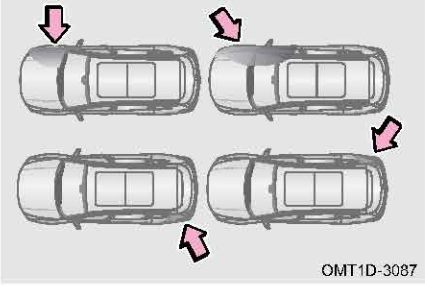
■ Conditions under which airbag (SRS) may not deploy during a collision



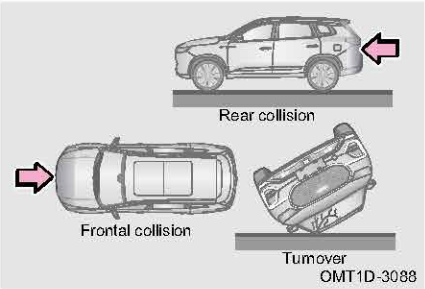
The driver frontal airbag, front passenger frontal airbag, driver knee airbag (if equipped), front passenger knee airbag (if equipped) will usually not deploy if the vehicle is involved in a side or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed frontal collision.



The driver frontal airbag, front passenger frontal airbag, driver knee airbag (if equipped), front passenger knee airbag (if equipped) may not deploy if the front of vehicle hits a telegraph pole, goes under a truck, or if the vehicle is involved in an oblique collision.



The front seat side airbag (if equipped) and curtain side airbag (if equipped) may not deploy if the vehicle is subjected to a collision from side, the rear part of the rear tire or a side collision at certain angles to body.



The front seat side airbag (if equipped) and curtain side airbag (if equipped) may not deploy if the vehicle is subjected to a front or rear collision, turnover or low speed side collision.

Precautions for airbag (SRS)

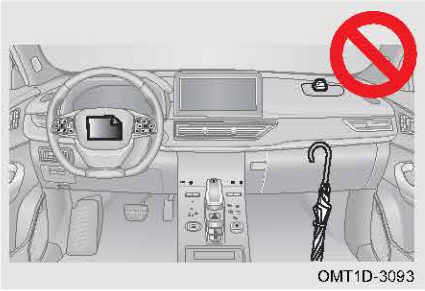
Always keep airbag (SRS) deployment path clear. It is forbidden to place anything (such as mobile phone) between the occupant and the airbag (SRS) and fix or place any objects on or near the airbag (SRS) cover; If there is an object between occupant and airbag (SRS), the airbag (SRS) may not deploy according to design path, or the airbag (SRS) may push object to occupant's body, causing serious injury or even death.

Do not sit on the edge of the seat or lean against the dashboard.

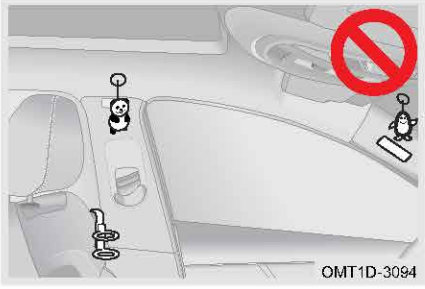
Do not allow a child to stand in front of the front passenger frontal airbag unit or sit on the knees of front passenger.

Do not lean against the door, A pillar, B pillar or C pillar.

Do not allow anyone to kneel on the passenger seat toward the door or put their heads or hands outside the vehicle.



Do not attach anything to or lean anything against the areas such as the instrument panel, steering wheel and lower portion of the instrument panel. These items can become projectiles when driver frontal airbag or front passenger frontal airbag deploys.



Do not attach anything to areas such as the door, windshield glass, side door glass, A pillar, B pillar, C pillar, roof side rail and assist grip.

Do not strike or apply excessive force to the area of airbag (SRS) components. Otherwise, it may cause airbag (SRS) malfunction.

Replacement of airbag (SRS) component

The related parts of the airbag (SRS) must be replaced 10 years from the date of vehicle purchase. In order to make sure that the airbag (SRS) can ensure your safety normally, please always go to Chery authorized service station to replace related parts of the airbag (SRS) within the specified time.

Make sure that the new owner knows the airbag (SRS) configuration and the replacement date of airbag (SRS) in this vehicle when the vehicle is sold.

Modification and disposal of airbag (SRS) components

Do not dispose the vehicle or operate the following components without permission of the Chery authorized service station, otherwise accidents and personal injuries may occur:

1. Modification of vehicle suspension system.
2. Modification of vehicle front bumper, etc.
3. Modification of side doors or door protective panel and B-pillar protective panel, etc.
4. Installation, removal, disassembly and repair of airbags (SRS).
5. Repair, modification, removal or replacement of steering wheel, instrument cluster, instrument panel and seats.

DRIVING ASSIST

5-1. Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR) System

Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR) System (If Equipped) 225

5-2. Speed Limit Assist System (SLA)

Speed Limit Assist System (SLA) (If Equipped) 225

5-3. Cruise System

Constant Speed Cruise System (CCS) (If Equipped) 227

Adaptive Cruise Control System (ACC) (If Equipped) 229

Active Speed Limit (ASL) (If Equipped)..... 234

5-4. Idling Stop-start System

Idling Stop-start System (If Equipped)..... 235

5-5. Hill Descent Control (HDC) System

Hill Descent Control (HDC) System (If Equipped) 238

5-6. Lane Assist System

Lane Assist System (If Equipped) 240

Lane Departure Warning System (LDW) (If Equipped) 241

Lane Keep Assist System (LKA) (If Equipped)..... 242

5-7. Blind Spot Detection (BSD) System

Blind Spot Detection (BSD) System (If Equipped) 243

Door Open Warning (DOW) system (If Equipped) 244

Rear Cross Traffic Alert (-RCTA) System (If Equipped) 245

Rear Collision Warning (RCW) system (If Equipped) 245

5-8. Automatic Emergency Braking System (AEB)/Front Collision Warning System (FCW)

Automatic Emergency Braking System (AEB)/ Front Collision Warning System (FCW) (If Equipped) 245

5-9. Traffic Jam Assist System (TJA)/Integrated Cruise Assist System (ICA)

Traffic Jam Assist System (TJA)/Integrated Cruise Assist System (ICA) (If Equipped) 248

5-10. Tire Inflation Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Tire Inflation Pressure Monitoring System (-TPMS) (If Equipped)..... 250

5-11. Parking Assist System

Parking View Monitor System (RVC) 252

Panoramic View Monitor (AVM) System (If Equipped) 254

Parking Radar System (If Equipped) 257

5-12. Braking Force Control System

Electronic Stability Program (ESP) System 262

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 262

Extended Function 264

5-1. Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR) System

Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR) System (If Equipped)

When traffic sign recognition system is turned on, if it recognizes the left turn sign, right turn sign or prohibition signs, etc. on the road ahead, the instrument cluster may give you an alarm sound and flash the recognized sign, remind you to obey local traffic rules.

READ

- TSR can be set in audio system. For details, refer to "Audio System".
- Some traffic signs only have flashing reminder on the instrument cluster, no alarm sound prompt.

Function limit

■ TSR may not be able to recognize in following situations:

- Faded signs.
- Signs on winding roads
- Rotated or damaged signs.
- High signs on highway.
- Signs that is covered fully or partly, or that the position can not be found easily.
- Signs covered by frost, snow, dust fully or partly.

WARNING

Traffic sign recognition system based on front camera function is affected by weather and light, so it is not suitable for all conditions.

5-2. Speed Limit Assist System (SLA)

Speed Limit Assist System (SLA) (If Equipped)

SLA detects speed limit sign information on road in front and combines the information with speed limit information of navigation system, and use the final speed limit information to remind the driver to pay attention to the various current road speed limit regulations in the form of image, sound, etc., to keep legal speed and observe local traffic laws.

After SLA detects speed limit sign information on road in front and combines the information with speed limit information of navigation system, " 120 " indicator in instrument cluster remains on, if the speed exceeds current speed limit for 5 km/h, prompt sound will sound 1 time.

READ
SLA can be set in audio system. For details, refer to "Audio System".

Function limit

■ SLA may not be able to recognize in following situations:

- Faded signs.
- Signs on winding roads
- Rotated or damaged signs.
- High signs on highway.
- Signs that is covered fully or partly, or that the position can not be found easily.
- Signs covered by frost, snow, dust fully or partly.

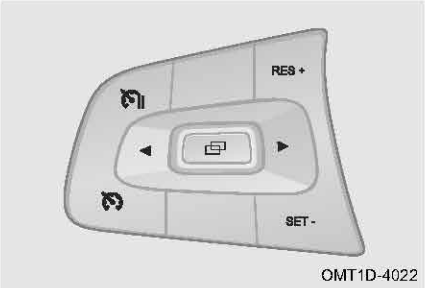
WARNING
SLA based on front view multi-function camera is affected by weather and light, so the function is not appropriate for all conditions.

5-3. Cruise System

Constant Speed Cruise System (CCS) (If Equipped)

Constant Speed Cruise System (CCS) can maintain the speed set by driver.

Constant Speed Cruise System (CCS) button (type A)



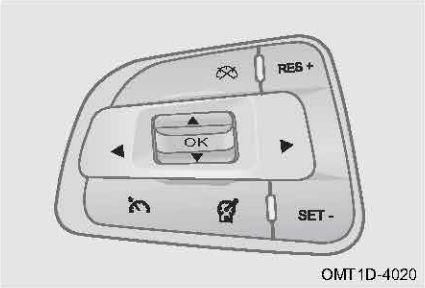
Cruise button " ": Turn on/off Constant Speed Cruise System (CCS).

Temporarily exit cruise button " ": Temporarily exit Constant Speed Cruise System (CCS).

"RES +" button: Resume Constant Speed Cruise System (CCS) and adjust speed value.

"SET-" button: Enter Constant Speed Cruise System (CCS), adjust speed value.

Constant Speed Cruise System (CCS) button (type B)



Cruise button " ": Turn on/off Constant Speed Cruise System (CCS).

Temporarily exit cruise button " ": Temporarily exit Constant Speed Cruise System (CCS).

Active speed limit button " ": Turn on/off Active Speed Limit (ASL).

"RES +" button: Resume Constant Speed Cruise System (CCS) and adjust speed value.

"SET-" button: Enter Constant Speed Cruise System (CCS), set Active Speed Limit (ASL) and adjust speed value.

READ
RES+ and SET- are shared button for Constant Speed Cruise System (CCS) and Active Speed Limit (ASL).

Usage method

■ Entering Constant Speed Cruise System (CCS)

Turn vehicle power to ON mode, press " " button to enter pre-cruising state, " " indicator in instrument cluster remains on; vehicle speed is within 40 - 150 km/h, press "SET-" button again to set current vehicle speed as cruise speed and enter cruising state, " " indicator in instrument cluster remains on.

■ Exiting Constant Speed Cruise System (CCS)

Press " " button to exit cruising state, and " " indicator in instrument cluster goes off.

Press " " button to exit cruising state, then enter pre-cruising state, " " indicator in instrument cluster remains on.

In cruising process, press " " button to exit cruise function, and " " indicator in instrument cluster goes off; Enter pre-speed limit state and " " indicator in instrument cluster remains on.

Exit cruising state and enter pre-cruising state when brake pedal (vehicle with automatic transmission) or clutch pedal (vehicle with manual transmission) is depressed or sudden braking is applied during cruising process, " " indicator in instrument cluster remains on.

■ Speed setting

Press "RES+" button in cruising process, set vehicle speed will increase by 1 km/h.

Long press "RES+" button in cruising process, set vehicle speed will increase continuously.

Press "SET-" button in cruising process, set vehicle speed will decrease by 1 km/h.

Long press "SET-" button in cruising process, set vehicle speed will decrease continuously.

Function limit

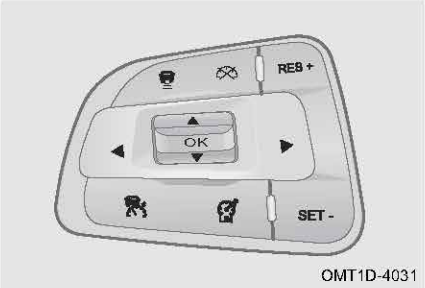
■ Under the following situations, do not use constant speed cruise system CCS. Failure to do so may cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury:

1. During emergency towing.
2. In heavy traffic.
3. On winding roads.
4. On roads with sharp curves.
5. On slippery roads, such as roads covered with rain, ice or snow.
6. Vehicle speed may exceed set speed when driving up and down a steep hill.

Adaptive Cruise Control System (ACC) (If Equipped)

ACC can maintain the speed set by driver and can also follow the vehicle at a set safe distance.

Adaptive Cruise Control System (ACC) button



Adaptive cruise control system button " ": Turn on/off the ACC.

Temporarily exit cruise button " ": Temporarily exit ACC.

Following clearance adjusting button " ": Adjust the following clearance.

Active speed limit button " ": Turn on/off Active Speed Limit (ASL).

"RES+" button: Resume the ACC and adjust speed value.

"SET-" button: Enter the ACC, ASL and adjust speed value.

READ
RES+, SET- are shared button for ACC and ASL.

Adaptive cruise control system (ACC) activation conditions

The following conditions must be met at the same time, ACC can be activated:

1. Brake pedal is not depressed (during driving).
2. Driver door is closed.
3. Driver seat belt is fastened.
4. Transmission gear position is in D position.
5. Parking brake is not applied.
6. HDC is not turned on.
7. ESP is turned on.

8. ESP is not activated.
9. ABS is not activated.

Usage method

■ Entering ACC

Turn vehicle power to ON mode and press " " button to enter pre-cruising state, and " " indicator in instrument cluster remains on:

Method 1: During pre-cruising state, if vehicle speed is within 30-150 km/h, press "SET-" button to set current speed as cruise speed and enter cruising state, and " " indicator in instrument cluster remains on;

Method 2: During pre-cruising state, depress brake pedal and press "SET-" button with vehicle stationary, release brake pedal within 3 seconds (depress accelerator pedal slightly if the time exceeds 3 seconds) to enter cruising state, " " indicator in instrument cluster remains on, default set vehicle speed is 30 km/h.

READ

- ACC is exited when turning on ASL function.
- When there is a vehicle in the front of your vehicle at the same road, and driving speed is no higher than vehicle set speed, ACC will control the vehicle to follow vehicle ahead.
- When there is no vehicle in the front of your vehicle at the same road, or there is a vehicle and driving speed is higher than set vehicle, the vehicle drives at the set speed.
- When applying parking brake and entering pre-cruising state, press "SET-" button, instrument cluster will prompt "Please depress accelerator pedal to activate adaptive cruise control system (ACC)", driver depress accelerator pedal slightly to activate ACC according to the prompt.

■ Exiting adaptive cruise control

When one or more of the following situations occur in cruising process, ACC will exit:

1. Depress brake pedal.
2. Driver door is opened.
3. Driver seat belt is not fastened.
4. Pull up electric parking button.
5. Press "" button.
6. HDC is turned on.
7. ESP operates.
8. ABS operates.
9. AEB operates.
10. ESP is not turned on.
11. Transmission gear position is in a position other than D.
12. Driver depress accelerator pedal for more than 15 minutes.

After the above conditions that can exit function resuming, press "RES +" button, enter cruising state and resume set state before exiting.

■ Speed setting

Press "RES+" button in cruising process, set vehicle speed will increase by 1 km/h.

Long press "RES+" button in cruising process, set vehicle speed will increase by 5 km/h; when speed exceeds 80 km/h, set vehicle speed will increase by 10 km/h.

Press "SET-" button in cruising process, set vehicle speed will decrease by 1 km/h.

Long press "SET-" button in cruising process, set vehicle speed will decrease by 5 km/h; when speed exceeds 80 km/h, set vehicle speed will decrease by 10 km/h.

READ

- For ACC, the lowest speed setting is 30 km/h and the highest speed setting is 150 km/h.
- Speed will be lower than set speed when driving uphill, speed will be higher than set speed slightly when driving downhill.

Following clearance

Press " " button in cruising process, adjust following clearance which is divided into three levels, "Minimum Clearance", "Standard Clearance" and "-Maximum Clearance".

READ

- Following clearance changes based on speed and increases with speed improving.
- In minimum clearance mode, the distance between the vehicle and vehicle ahead will quite small during following at low speed. For safety, select maximum clearance mode to follow vehicle ahead on slippery road.
- During following vehicle ahead and decreasing, ESP continuously performs brake and motor will generate operation sound when rotating, this is normal and please drive at ease.

WARNING

- The driver must control vehicle, operate as needed in the whole driving process to avoid danger.
- Please note that any drive behavior must confirm all traffic regulations.

Overtaking

Depress accelerator pedal to overtake set speed in cruising process. After accelerator pedal is released, the control state will return to previous state. During overtaking, if the vehicle is too close to vehicle ahead, instrument cluster will pop up "Please take over the vehicle by driver" accompanied with urgent warning sound to remind driver to avoid.

Curve speed control

Decrease the speed when vehicle enters curve in cruising process, which help driver to drive through curve safely.

WARNING

- The driver must control vehicle, drive through curve as slowly as possible in the whole driving process.
- During entering into curve, due to limitation of detection target for radar probe, vehicle ahead on the same driving route may not be detected in time, which requires the driver to be ready to take over the control of the vehicle at any time.

Stopping and starting function

During following vehicle ahead in ACC mode, vehicle ahead decreases to stop, the vehicle also decreases to stop, after stopping:

1. If vehicle ahead starts within 3 seconds, the vehicle also starts automatically.
2. If vehicle ahead stops for more than 3 seconds and starts within 3 seconds to 10 minutes, driver need to depress accelerator pedal slightly to activate ACC.

3. When vehicle stops within 10 minutes, driver unfasten seat belt or open driver door, EPB is activated automatically and parking.
4. When vehicle stops for more than 10 minutes, the vehicle will exit ACC, and EPB will be activated automatically and parking.

⚠ WARNING
During following vehicle ahead, always pay attention to whether indicator " " is green. If it turns to gray, indicating front target has been lost in ACC mode, the vehicle will start to accelerate according to set speed.

Precautions for adaptive cruise control

1. ACC can not violate laws of physics and has certain limitations. Driver must always keep control of the vehicle and be fully responsible for the vehicle.
2. If the vehicle is extremely close to vehicle on adjacent lanes, ACC may select the vehicle as following target.
3. ACC can not respond to stationary objects and vehicles, crosswise vehicles, oncoming vehicles, pedestrians, bicycles and animals.
4. When stopping vehicle briefly in ACC mode, driver must confirm that there are no obstacles or other traffic participants such as pedestrians, bicycles and animals in front of the vehicle.
5. When ACC function is malfunctioning, " " yellow indicator in instrument cluster comes on. At this time, ACC function fails, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
6. During ACC controls vehicle, never inadvertently step on accelerator pedal, otherwise, ACC will not apply brake to vehicle, driver should always be ready to brake actively to ensure the safety of the vehicle.
7. ACC can only realize limited brake, if vehicle ahead occurs sudden brake, another driver cuts in front of the vehicle, the vehicle cuts behind a preceding vehicle, ACC may not respond or react to vehicle ahead too slow, in this case, driver should take over the vehicle control in time.
8. Driver should adjust the following clearance from vehicle ahead based on traffic flow and weather condition and is responsible for ensuring the vehicle can stop safely at any time. In inclement weather (rain, snow, fog, etc.), ACC may not recognize vehicle ahead. In this case, ACC should be turned off.
9. ACC is suitable for use on highways and roads in good condition, It is not recommend for use on urban roads, narrow roads, mountain roads, hills, tunnels, etc. If using ACC in curve, target vehicle ahead may be lost or target selection is delayed in ACC mode due to limitation of sensor detection range, in this case, ACC will control vehicle to accelerate to set speed.
10. During the process of following the vehicle ahead to stop, ACC may not be able to recognize the end of the vehicle, but the lower or upper part of

vehicle (such as rear axle of truck that has higher chassis, upper part of lower flatbed trailer). In these cases, system cannot ensure a proper stopping distance or even lead to collision. Therefore, driver must keep a watch on vehicle and be ready to take over vehicle control anytime during this process.

11. Two sensors of radar and camera are installed in the front area of vehicle and behind windshield. Please note that view of sensor should not be covered by pollutants, and front or surrounding areas should not be modified or decorated with license plate frames, etc. Especially, when sensor is completely covered by snow, ACC function will be exited. System performance may be reduced or it's function fails due to sensor vibration or collision. In this case, please go to Chery authorized service station for recalibration for sensors as soon as possible.

Precautions mentioned above do not cover all circumstances that may affect system normal operation. System function may fail to bring the expected effect due to other reasons. Driver must always take full responsibility for vehicle control anytime.

Active Speed Limit (ASL) (If Equipped)

Driver drives vehicle at set limit speed.

Usage method

OMT1D-4040

■ Entering Active Speed Limit (ASL)

Turn vehicle power to ON mode and press " " button to enter pre-speed limit state, and " " indicator in instrument cluster remains on;

Method 1: During pre-speed limit state, if engine is not started or vehicle speed is lower than 30 km/h, press "SET-" button to enter speed limit state, and " " indicator in instrument cluster remains on, set vehicle speed by default is 30 km/h;

Method 2: During pre-speed limit state, if vehicle speed is within 30 - 200 km/h, press "SET-" button to set current speed as limit speed to enter speed limit state, and " " indicator in instrument cluster remains on.

■ Exiting Active Speed Limit (ASL)

Press " " button to exit speed limit state, and " " indicator in instrument cluster goes off.

Press "" button to exit speed limit state, enter pre-speed limit state, and "" indicator in instrument cluster remains on.

Press "" button to exit speed limit state, enter pre-cruising state, and "" indicator in instrument cluster remains on.

Press "" button to exit speed limit state, enter pre-cruising state, and "" indicator in instrument cluster remains on.

■ Speed setting

Press "RES+" button in speed limit process, set vehicle speed will increase by 1 km/h.

Long press "RES +" button in speed limit process, set vehicle speed will increase by 5 km/h.

Press "SET-" button in speed limit process, set vehicle speed will decrease by 1 km/h.

Long press "SET-" button in speed limit process, set vehicle speed will decrease by 5 km/h.

Overtaking

In speed limit process, in order to overtake or in other operation condition, fully depress accelerator pedal to enter pre-speed limit state, and "" indicator in instrument cluster remains on.

After overtaking, if vehicle speed is more than previous set limit speed, it enters pre-speed limit state, and "" indicator in instrument cluster remains on.

After overtaking, if vehicle speed is less than previous set limit speed, it enters speed limit state, and "" indicator in instrument cluster remains on.

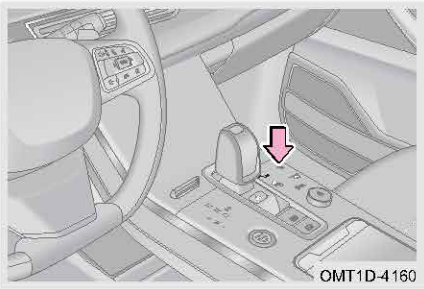
5-4. Idling Stop-start System

Idling Stop-start System (If Equipped)

When the vehicle encounters a traffic light or other conditions need to stop during driving, the idling stop-start function will shut down the engine. When it detects startup requirement, the engine will automatically start. This function can improve vehicle fuel economy and reduce exhaust contamination and noise when stopping to wait.

When idling stop-start system works normally, if the followings are met, engine stops when stopping and idling. And when it is necessary to start off, it start engine automatically. Operation of idling stop-start system does not affect driver safety and the normal operation of other systems in vehicle (Air conditioning system, brake system and audio system etc. are not affected). In some cases, to ensure safe driving and comfort, idle start-stop system will be temporarily disabled, which is normal. When the start-stop condition is met, start-stop function will be restored automatically, please use securely.

Idling stop-start system switch



Click " " switch (indicator comes on), idling stop-start system is disabled; Click " " switch (indicator goes off) again to enable stop-start system.

Idling stop-start system auto stop activation conditions

- Hood is closed.
- Vehicle is fully stopped.
- Non-high altitude area (below 2800 m).
- Accelerator pedal is released completely.
- Driver door is closed.
- Driver seat belt is fastened.
- Vehicle is not in sudden brake.
- Battery capacity requirement is met (not less than 70%).
- Shift lever is in D/M position.
- Vehicle is not on a steep slope (slopes less than 10% for uphill and downhill).
- There is no fault in stop-start system.
- Depress the brake pedal.
- ACC is not turned on.
- AEB signal is not activated.
- The drive chain allows the engine to stop.
- The engine water temperature allows automatic shutdown (engine water temperature is higher than 48℃).
- Brake vacuum status allows automatic shutdown.
- The status of stop-start function main switch in ON.
- Steering wheel angle is not in a large angle steering state (less than 270°).
- After the vehicle starting or large angle steering, the speed has reached 8 km/h or more.
- If the battery negative cable has been disconnected, the vehicle must stand for more than 4 hours after connection.
- Ambient temperature is not less than 3℃ (applicable to F4J20 engine and some F4J16 engine).

- Air conditioning comfort is allowed (For example, the requirements of defogging, cooling and heating are met).

Idling stop-start system auto start activation conditions

- Driver door is closed.
- Driver seat belt is fastened.
- Hood is closed.
- There is no fault in stop-start system.
- The drive chain allows the engine to start.
- The status of stop-start function main switch in ON.

When the above conditions and any of the following start conditions are met, engine will start automatically:

- A/C requests trigger start.
- Starts when the accelerator pedal is depressed in D/M/R gear.
- Engine is started when the shift lever is shifted to R.
- Engine is started when the steering wheel is turned at an angle of more than 30°.
- The status of stop-start function main switch is switched from ON to OFF.
- When the shift lever is in N and brake pedal is not depressed, engine is started after brake pedal is depressed.
- When the shift lever is in P and brake pedal is not depressed, engine is started after brake pedal is depressed.
- When the shift lever is in N and brake pedal is not depressed, engine is started after shift lever is shifted to D/M.
- With the brake pedal not released or not completely released after stopping, it starts when shifting from P/N to D/M.
- When the shift lever is in D/M and brake pedal is held depressing after engine stops, engine is started after brake pedal is released.

  Note: When AUTO HOLD function is activated, engine is not started after releasing the brake pedal, and engine is started after depressing the accelerator pedal.

Idling stop-start system indicator

When the conditions are met, "Ⓐ" green indicator in instrument cluster remains on.

When the start conditions safely are not met or idling stop-start system is turned off, "Ⓐ" yellow indicator in instrument cluster remains on.

When there is a fault, "Ⓐ" yellow indicator in instrument cluster blinks.

READ

When idling stop-start system judges that the safety conditions are not met (-such as, open a door while engine stopping), start engine manually by user, and "Ⓐ" yellow indicator in instrument cluster comes on again. At the same time,"Start engine manually" is displayed on instrument cluster. At this time, there is no problem in system, please use securely.

Function limit

■ In some cases, to ensure safe driving, the system will automatically start engine without any operation from the driver, including the following:

- Vehicle is rolling away (vehicle speed is higher than 2 km/h).
- Insufficient battery is detected.
- Insufficient brake vacuum is detected.
- Auto stop time is more than 3 minutes.
- Starts when the engine water temperature exceeds the limit value.

READ

If engine start and stop is triggered several times in a short time, the starter may overheat and the system will enter the starter hot protection state. At this time, auto stop will be disabled, which is not a malfunction. After driving for a period of time, after system determines starter temperature is safe, engine auto stop function recovers by itself.

5-5. Hill Descent Control (HDC) System

Hill Descent Control (HDC) System (If Equipped)

HDC can help vehicle pass through steep road safely under controlled conditions. After HDC is turned on, when vehicle is driving down a steep slope, for vehicle with automatic transmission, speed control range is 10 - 35 km/h, and for vehicle with manual transmission, speed control range is 14 - 35 km/h; when initial speed is lower than the minimum speed, vehicle will control at the minimum speed by default. The current control vehicle speed can be increased or decreased in a given speed range by depressing accelerator or brake pedal.

Hill Descent Control (HDC) system switch

When vehicle speed is ≤ 60 km/h, click " " switch (indicator comes on), HDC system turns on; when vehicle speed is > 60 km/h or click " " switch again (indicator goes off), HDC system turns off.

READ

The interior designs are different depending on the configuration of the vehicle. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

CAUTION

- Before entering steep road, set HDC system so that driver can operate steering wheel without distraction.
- When HDC system is working, the ABS will start automatically if there is a tire lock.
- When HDC system is working, if any wheel loses contact with ground, the braking force will be distributed to the wheel with higher adhesion coefficient.
- HDC system is to actively apply the braking force through the ESP work. The system will have a hydraulic operation sound when working, which is a normal phenomenon. When the ESP fails, the HDC system cannot be turned on. Please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

WARNING

The driver must control vehicle and operate as needed in the whole driving process to avoid danger.

Hill Descent Control (HDC) system indicator

When the system is activated, " " green indicator remains on.

When there is a fault, " " yellow indicator goes off.

5-6. Lane Assist System

Lane Assist System (If Equipped)

Lane assist system includes Lane Departure Warning System (LDW) and Lane Keep Assist System (LKA), which can assist driver to reduce traffic accident due to lane departure, improving driving safety.

Lane assist system switch

Click the LDW button on the display, " " is blue, indicating that the LDW is turned on; " " is white, indicating that the LDW is turned off.

Click the LKA button on the display, " " is blue, indicating that the LKA is turned on; " " is white, indicating that the LKA is turned off.

READ

- LDW and LKA cannot be turned on simultaneously.
- Lane line captured by camera: It can detects white solid line, white dotted line, yellow solid line, yellow dotted line and double solid line lanes.
- The system may not operate in cold and bad weather conditions, rain, snow, fog or strong contrast lighting can affect the sensor.
- The system may not operate when driving on cement road.
- The system may not operate when driving in road construction area.
- The system may not operate when driving on flooded or muddy roads.
- The system may not work when driving on sharp turns or narrow roads.
- The system will only work normally on the roads with two clear lane lines.
- When only single-sided lane line is detected, the system alarm stability decreases.
- If sensor is disturbed, the system may not work.
- Sensors may misidentify temporary construction markings on the road, etc. and give false alarm by mistake.
- If your vehicle suspension kit is not approved by us, the system may not work properly.
- Keep front view multi-function camera free from obstructions, such as bird droppings, insects and ice.

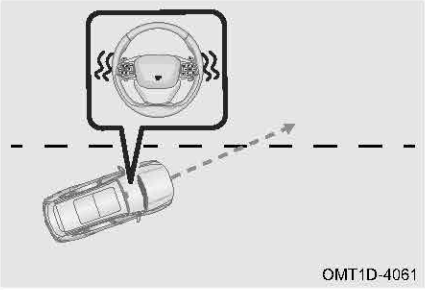
⚠ WARNING

- The driver must control vehicle, operate as needed in the whole driving process to avoid danger.
- Lane assist system just offer assistance to you. It may not work properly under all driving conditions, weather conditions, traffic conditions or road conditions.

Lane Departure Warning System (LDW) (If Equipped)

LDW detects lane line by front view multi-function camera. The system sends an alarm and steering wheel vibrates when wheel rolls over lane line and vehicle departs from its lane.

Activating LDW



When speed increases to ⩾ 65 km/h, LDW enters activating; When speed decreases from more than 65 km/h to 60 km/h, LDW enters pre-activating; When speed is < 60 km/h, LDW exits after 3 seconds.

READ

LDW sensitivity can be set in audio system. For details, refer to "Audio System".

Lane departure warning system (LDW) indicator

When the system is pre-activated, "" gray indicator in instrument cluster remains on.

When the system is activated, "" green indicator remains on.

During operation, "" yellow indicator in instrument cluster blinks.

When there is a fault, "" yellow indicator in instrument cluster remains on.

Function limit

■ LDW may not work properly in the following conditions:

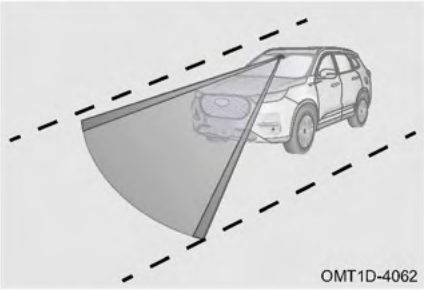
1. When changing lanes.
2. When turning with high speed.
3. When depressing accelerator pedal with excess force.
4. When depressing brake pedal with excess force.
5. When turning on hazard light.
6. When turning on departure side turn signal light.
7. When driving on curve with small turning radius.

8. When lane line is too thin, broken, blurred or departure side has no lane line.

Lane Keep Assist System (LKA) (If Equipped)

LKA detects lane line by front view multi-function camera. When lane lines on left and right sides are detected by system, system applies corrective steering intervention to keep vehicle in the middle of lane.

Activating LKA



When speed increases to ⩾ 60 km/h, LKA enters activating; When speed is decreases from more than 60 km/h to 55 km/h, LKA enters pre-activating.

> ⚠ CAUTION
> - Driver performs a active control when meeting a bigger curve.
> - Driver performs a active control when meeting some conditions such as lane increase, lane merger, etc.
> - Driver performs a active control when meeting complex traffic environment (such as intersection, traffic jam section).

Lane keep assist system (LKA) indicator

When the system is pre-activated, "" gray indicator in instrument cluster remains on.

When the system is activated, "" green indicator remains on.

During operation, "" green indicator in instrument cluster remains on.

When there is a fault, "" yellow indicator in instrument cluster remains on.

Function limit

■ LKA may not work properly in the following conditions:

1. When changing lanes.
2. When turning on turn signal light.
3. When braking with excess force.
4. When turning with high speed.
5. When depressing accelerator pedal with excess force.
6. When turning on hazard light.
7. LKA can recognize that driver does not operate steering wheel for a while.

8. Steering wheel is operated by driver when LKA applies corrective steering intervention.

■ Under the following situations, do not use LKA. Failure to do so may cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury:

1. When driving on low-quality section.
2. When driving on road construction site.
3. When driving on roads with more curves.
4. During night and when the surrounding light is dark.
5. When driving vehicle in a sporty style.
6. In bad weathers (such as rain, snow, fog).

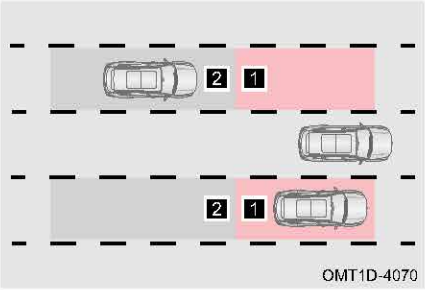
5-7. Blind Spot Detection (BSD) System

Blind Spot Detection (BSD) System (If Equipped)

BSD system is used to monitor presence of moving vehicles in left and right rear areas of your vehicle and inform driver related information to remind the driver for driving safety and lane-changing safety. This system extends Lane Change Assist (LCA) system, Door Open Warning (DOW) system and Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) system, etc.

⚠ WARNING
BSD system just offer assistance to you. It may not work properly under all driving conditions, weather conditions, traffic conditions or road conditions.

Activating Blind Spot Detection (BSD) system/Lane Change Assist (LCA) system



When speed increases to ⩾ 15 km/h, BSD system enters activating; When speed is decreases from more than 15 km/h to 10 km/h, BSD system enters pre-activating.

1 Detection area of BSD system.

2 Vehicle approaches detection area of BSD system.

Level I: If a vehicle enters detection area and meets alarm conditions, level alarm I is triggered. "" yellow indicator on rear view mirror remains on, "" green indicator in instrument cluster remains on.

Level II: On base of level I, turn on the turn signal light in the same side. After level alarm II is triggered, "" yellow indicator on rear view mirror blinks, "" yellow indicator in instrument cluster blinks, alarm sounds.

READ

- BSD can be set in audio system. For details, refer to "Audio System".
- Turn vehicle power to ON mode, BSD system turns on by default.

CAUTION

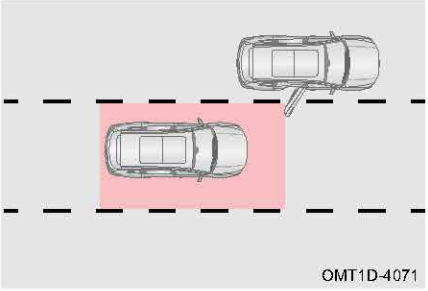
- Blind Spot Detection (BSD) system/Lane Change Assist (LCA) system may detects stationary objects on or near a road (such as guardrails, tunnels, side walls, and parked vehicles) to turn on warning light.
- When towing or attaching accessories to rear of vehicle (such as a bicycle carrier), turn off BSD system. Otherwise, radar radio waves will be affected, causing system work abnormally.
- When lots of snow or ice accumulates on rear bumper and near radar sensor, or if drive on snowy road for a long time, BSD system may not work.

Blind Spot Detection (BSD) system indicator

During operation, level alarm I " " green indicator in instrument cluster remains on; level alarm II " " yellow indicator in instrument cluster blinks.

When there is a fault, " " yellow indicator in instrument cluster remains on.

Door Open Warning (DOW) system (If Equipped)



When vehicle power is in OFF/ACC/ON mode and the vehicle is stationary, if BSD detects approaching vehicles on left and right sides of the vehicle and any door is opened, DOW sounds an alarm to remind the driver/occupant to pay attention to following vehicle when exiting to avoid collision.

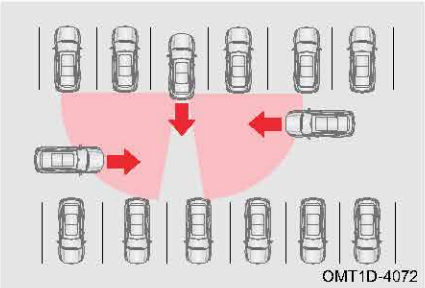
Level I: If a vehicle enters detection area and meets alarm conditions, level alarm I is triggered. " " yellow indicator on corresponding side rear view mirror remains on, indicator " " on corresponding side rear door trim panel remains on.

Level II: On base of level I, open the door. After level alarm II is triggered, " " yellow indicator on corresponding side rear mirror blinks, " " indicator on corresponding side rear door trim panel blinks, alarm sounds.

READ

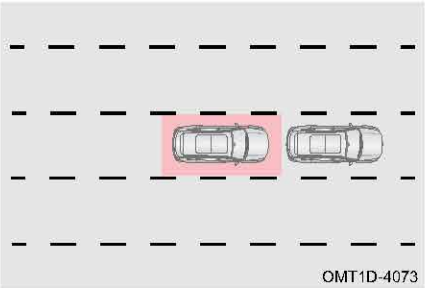
DOW can be set in audio system. For details, refer to "Audio System".

Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) System (If Equipped)



When vehicle power is turned to ON mode and vehicle is backed up (shift lever is shifted into R position), BSD system detects that vehicles are approaching from left/right sides, "" yellow indicator on rear view mirror blinks and alarm sounds.

Rear Collision Warning (RCW) system (If Equipped)



With vehicle power in ON mode and vehicle speed ⩾ 15km/h, if a following vehicle quickly approaches the vehicle, hazard light flashes, alarm sounds.

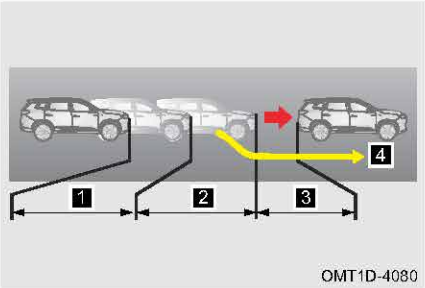
READ
RCW can be set in audio system. For details, refer to "Audio System".

5-8. Automatic Emergency Braking System (AEB)/Front Collision Warning System (FCW)

Automatic Emergency Braking System (AEB)/Front Collision Warning System (FCW) (If Equipped)

When vehicle is about to impact vehicle ahead or pedestrian, AEB and FCW work together, sounding an alarm to remind driver, if driver cannot respond quickly enough, vehicle will brake automatically, reducing loss from collision.

Activating AEB/FCW



1. Start pre-warning before impacting.
2. Start braking partly before impacting.
3. Start emergency braking before impacting.
4. If driver reacts correctly (for example, avoid a collision by steering), the following emergency braking is canceled.

READ

AEB/FCW/distance warning system can be set in audio system. For details, refer to "Audio System".

CAUTION

- When speed is < 30 km/h, FCW does not sound an alarm; When speed is > 85 km/h, FCW does not sound an alarm for static target ahead.
- Operating speed range of AEB is 4 - 53 km/h for static vehicle target; Operating speed range of AEB is 4 - 80 km/h for moving vehicle target; Operating speed range of AEB is 4 - 64 km/h for pedestrians and cyclists.
- Driver need to ensure that seat belts have been fastened, doors are closed. Failure to do so, AEB does not work.
- Turn on ESP, FCW, AEB, otherwise, FCW and AEB do not work.
- "" yellow indicator in instrument cluster remains on, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- Driver need to take over vehicle because vehicle does not keep stationary state when vehicle is braked automatically to stopped.
- During AEB is activated, driver quickly rotates steering wheel or depresses accelerator pedal firmly, AEB will exit.

⚠ WARNING

- The driver must control vehicle, operate as needed in the whole driving process to avoid danger.
- AEB just offer assistance to you. It may not work properly under all driving conditions, weather conditions, traffic conditions or road conditions.
- The vehicle targets that can be detected by AEB include passenger vehicles, buses, trucks. For some restructured vehicles (such as cement tank trucks, special vehicles with higher or lower chassis), AEB has certain limitations in detecting.
- AEB can only play the best role when it detects some characteristics consistent with normal human walking (such as head swing, arm swing, leg swing); AEB regards pedestrians who across the vehicle's lane as target, but AEB does not regard pedestrians who walk longitudinally in the lane, walk on a curve, or is blocked by other objects.
- AEB can only play the best role when it detects body and bicycle contour information as well as normal cycling movements; AEB does not regard an oncoming cyclist as target.
- AEB is not always capable of detecting vehicles, cyclists or pedestrians, and the system may generate unnecessary braking automatically or do not work for a variety of reasons.; AEB is only a driving assist system to reduce severity of collision, it is not always possible to completely avoid collision in the speed range.

Precautions for automatic emergency braking system (AEB)

1. AEB can not violate laws of physics and has certain limitations. Driver must always keep control of the vehicle and be fully responsible for the vehicle.
2. Driver controls speed and the distance from vehicle ahead according to weathers, road surface conditions, traffic conditions, etc.
3. AEB does not react to animals, crossing vehicles, incoming vehicles, bicycles and pedestrians.
4. System performance may be greatly limited for targets that cut into the lane quickly, targets that are detected after the vehicle changes lanes, and targets in curves.
5. Fasten all seat belts and secure all loads to avoid danger when AEB is triggered.
6. When AEB is malfunctioning, "" yellow indicator in instrument cluster remains on, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
7. When inspecting the vehicle using a drum tester, FCW and AEB should be turned off.
8. When installing non-full size spare tire, it is recommended that customer turns off FCW and AEB, and replace full-size tires of original vehicle in time.

9. In some special circumstances, AEB may perform unnecessary warning and braking, such as crossing the track of the road, entering the underground parking lot turning, etc. Some circumstances will affect and weaken sensor detection, effecting related functions of system, such as tunnel, light of incoming vehicle, reflection of slippery road.
10. Two sensors of radar and camera are installed in the front area of vehicle and behind windshield; Please note that view of sensor should not be covered by pollutants, and front or surrounding areas should not be modified or decorated with license plate frames, etc. Especially, when sensor is completely covered by snow, system function will be exited. AEB performance may be reduced or it's function fails due to sensor vibration or collision. In this case, please go to Chery authorized service station for recalibration for sensors as soon as possible.

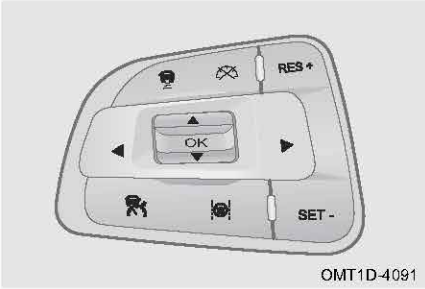
Precautions mentioned above do not cover all circumstances that may affect AEB normal operation. AEB function may fail to bring the expected effect due to other reasons. Driver must always assume full responsibility for vehicle control anytime.

5-9. Traffic Jam Assist System (TJA)/Integrated Cruise Assist System (ICA)

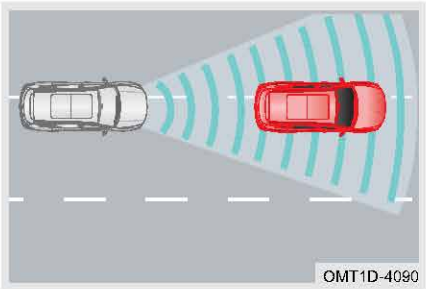
Traffic Jam Assist System (TJA)/Integrated Cruise Assist System (ICA) (If Equipped)

TJA/ICA detects lane line through the front view camera to perform vertical and horizontal control for vehicle, providing driving assist and reducing driver's workload under monotonous driving environment or busy traffic.

Activating TJA/ICA



When " " button is pressed, TJA/ICA is turned on and ACC is turned on automatically at the same time, " " gray indicator in instrument cluster remains on. When all ACC activation conditions are met, press "SET-" button, ACC is activated firstly, meanwhile, front camera detect if there are lane lines or vehicle targets, when activation conditions are met, " " green indicator in instrument cluster remains on.



TJA is used when speed is < 60 km/h: Vehicle will be kept near lane center. If no lane line is detected, the vehicle follows vehicle ahead as driving target. If neither lane line nor target vehicle is detected, TJA will be turned off.

ICA is used when speed is 60 km/h-130 km/h: Vehicle will be kept near lane center. If no lane line is detected, ICA will be turned off regardless of whether there is a target vehicle ahead.

Function limit

■ TJA/ICA may not work properly in the following conditions:

1. Hands off steering wheel.
2. Turn signal lights are turned on.
3. Vehicle speed is < 1 km/h.
4. Hazard light is turned on.
5. Lane line is not detected.
6. Too wide or too narrow lane.
7. Too small lane curve radius.
8. Driver rotates steering wheel actively.
9. Any exiting condition for ACC exists.

⚠ WARNING

- The driver must control vehicle, operate as needed in the whole driving process to avoid danger.
- TJA/ICA just offer assistance to you. It may not work properly under some driving conditions, weather conditions, traffic conditions or road conditions.

Precautions for traffic jam assist system (TJA)/integrated cruise assist system (ICA)

1. TJA/ICA is driving assist system, which can not violate laws of physics and has certain limitations. Driver must always keep control of the vehicle and be fully responsible for the vehicle.
2. Longitudinal control of TJA/ICA is performed by ACC, lateral control of TJA/ICA is performed by LKA, all precautions for ACC and LKA are also applicable to the system.

3. TJA/ICA does not provide automatic driving function and does not allow hand off driving. Diver prepares control vehicle anytime to ensure safety under the conditions of turning, crossing, merging into one lane and vehicle ahead cutting.
4. TJA/ICA performance is affected by weather, illumination and lane line definition, with significant performance degradation or even loss of function in the case of backlight, sunset, nighttime, road surface covered by snow and ice, and unclear lane lines due to surface worn.
5. When TJA/ICA is malfunctioning, "" yellow indicator in instrument cluster remains on, at this time, TJA/ICA function fails, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

Precautions mentioned above do not cover all circumstances that may affect system normal operation. System function may fail to bring the expected effect due to other reasons. Driver must always assume full responsibility for vehicle control anytime.

5-10. Tire Inflation Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Tire Inflation Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) (If Equipped)

TPMS is an active safety configuration and can monitor pressure and temperature of tire in real-time and the information can be checked through information display area. When tire inflation pressure is too low or temperature is too high, tire inflation pressure monitoring system alarms.

OMT1D-4100

On driving information screen, move steering wheel combination button " OK " upward and downward to tire pressure display screen, then tire inflation pressure and temperature values can be checked.

When speed is more than 30 km/h for period of time, tire inflation pressure and temperature values will be displayed on instrument cluster in real-time; Vehicle power is turned from OFF mode to ON mode (without power-off), tire pressure and temperature values will be displayed on instrument cluster.

When speed is more than 30 km/h, if TPMS has not received radio-frequency signal from one or more sensors after several minutes, TPMS will send malfunction warning. "" yellow indicator in instrument cluster blinks for 75 seconds and then it remains on. At this time, "Abnormal Tire Pressure, Check TPMS" is displayed and disappear 5 seconds later but can be checked on tire pressure display screen.

READ

Even if vehicle is equipped with TPMS, check if tire inflation pressure and appearance are normal before driving. Please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as needed.

Low pressure warning

OMT1D-4101

When tire inflation pressure is less than 1.84 bar, and drives at a speed greater than 30 km/h for period of time, system will warn for low pressure. During low pressure warning, corresponding wheel icon will blink, current tire inflation pressure value will be displayed and "(!)" yellow indicator in instrument cluster remains on.

When vehicle power is turned to ON from OFF, and tire inflation pressure is less than 1.84 bar, system will warn for low pressure. During low pressure warning, corresponding wheel icon will blink, current tire inflation pressure value will be displayed and "(!)" yellow indicator in instrument cluster remains on.

When low pressure warning occurs, please inflate the tire to 2.3 bar as soon as possible. After the vehicle is driven for a period of time at a speed greater than 30 km/h, low pressure warning cancels automatically.

CAUTION

Low tire inflation pressure will increase fuel consumption and aggravate tire wear. Serious tire wear may cause a risk of tire blowout, inspect causes of air leakage. Please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible as needed.

High temperature warning

OMT1D-4102

When tire temperature is more than 85°C, and drives at a speed greater than 30 km/h for period of time, system will warn for high temperature. During high temperature warning, corresponding wheel icon will blink, current tire temperature value will be displayed and " (!) " yellow indicator in instrument cluster remains on.

When vehicle power is turned to ON from OFF, and tire temperature is more than 85°C, system will warn for high temperature. During high temperature warning, corresponding wheel icon will blink, current tire temperature value will be displayed and "(!)" yellow indicator in instrument cluster remains on.

When warning for high temperature, if tire temperature is less than 80°C, and drives vehicle at a speed greater than 30 km/h for period of time, high temperature warning cancels automatically.

⚠ CAUTION
When warning for high temperature, stop driving at once to cool down tires naturally. Do not cool it down by pouring cold water, otherwise, tire may be damaged, causing an accident. Please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible as needed.

Function limit

■ TPMS may send system malfunction warning in the following conditions:

1. Configuration learning of tire pressure monitoring system is not performed after replacing wheels (spare tire included).
2. Sensor may be affected due to electromagnetic shielding caused by installing tire chains, affecting proper operation of tire pressure monitoring system.
3. Tire pressure sensor or other components has been damaged, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible as needed.
4. TPMS may not work properly due to interference of electronic equipment (-over standard equipment) installed on vehicle, resulting false alarm.
5. TPMS may not operate due to radio interference; And it may be interfered temporarily due to strong electromagnetic radio signals with same frequency (433 MHZ).

READ
Common radio interference sources include vehicle power, driving recorder, air purifier, entrance guard card, remote control, cell phone base station, TV tower, etc.

5-11. Parking Assist System

Parking View Monitor System (RVC)

RVC collects the rear view image of vehicle through rear camera and displays the rear view and lane guideline by audio head unit, providing safety and easy parking for driver.

Usage method

OMT1D-4110

Move shift lever to R to enter RVC screen, and the screen will display the parking view and lane guideline. Lane guideline varies depending on steering wheel rotation and it is used for prejudging the reversing traveling trace.

⚠ CAUTION

- Use the distance as a reference (such as on the hill).
- Vehicle width guideline and predicting line are wider than the actual line.
- Do not scratch the lens when cleaning dirt or snow on the camera surface.
- If tire is replaced with a different size, the displayed predicting line is different from the actual line, please use the rear view mirror or check and determine distance to other objects actually.

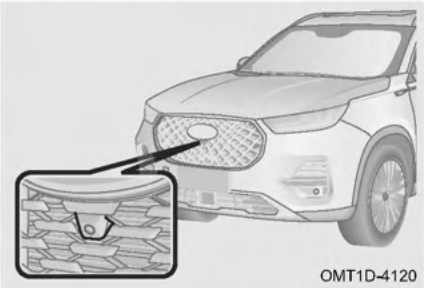
⚠ WARNING

- When reversing, make sure that back door is firmly closed.
- Never distract your attention from surrounding traffic due to images on display.
- Due to the limited monitoring range, RVC cannot view the bottom and corners of bumper.
- When reversing, always pay extra attention to surrounding children, small animals and objects, because they cannot always be detected by camera.
- Because rear camera use wide-angle lens, object distance displayed on RVC is different from the actual distance.
- Never hit the lens. They are precise instrument. Failure to do so may lead to malfunction or damage, causing a fire or electric shock.
- When washing the vehicle body with high-pressure water, do not spray water around the camera, otherwise, water will enter camera and condense on the lens, causing malfunction, fire, or electric shock.
- RVC is convenient, but it is not a substitute for correct reverse operation. When reversing, be sure to look around to check if the surrounding is safe and reverse slowly.
- Rear camera lens may enlarge and distort the view, so image on display is different from real object or it cannot reflect the real object accurately, and there is also blind spot and a little delay.

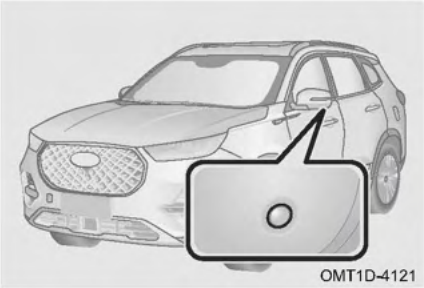
Panoramic View Monitor (AVM) System (If Equipped)

AVM collects the surrounding view of the vehicle through four cameras and displays the surrounding view and lane guideline by audio head unit, providing safety and easy parking for driver.

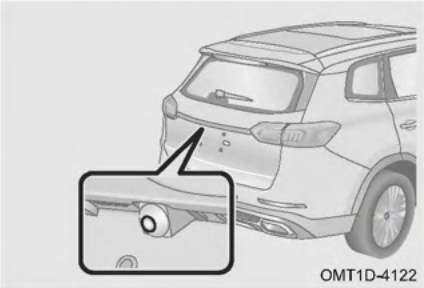
Camera layout



Installation position of front camera: located at intake grille of front bumper.

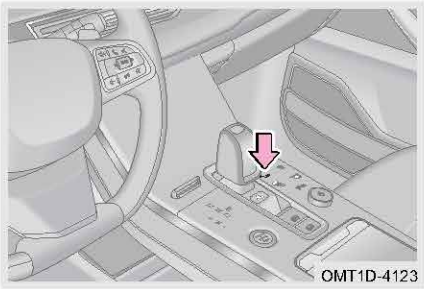


Installation position of left/right cameras: located at the bottom of left/right outside rear view mirrors.



Installation position of rear camera: located on center part above rear license plate.

Usage method



Turn vehicle power to ON mode, and vehicle speed is less than 20 km/h:

Method 1: Move shift lever to R to enter AVM; move shift lever out from R position to exit AVM after delaying 15 seconds.

Method 2: Click "AVM" switch (indicator comes on) to enter AVM; click "AVM" switch (indicator goes off) to exit AVM.

Method 3: It enters AVM when turning on left/right turn signal lights (it is necessary to turn on turn signal light activation panoramic function in AVM setting); it exit AVM when turning off left/right turn signal lights.

Method 4: It enters AVM when turning with large angle (it is necessary to turn on corner activation panoramic function in AVM setting).

Note: After turning vehicle power to OFF mode or vehicle speed is more than 30 km/h, it exits AVM.

READ

- The interior designs are different depending on the configuration of the vehicle. Please refer to the actual vehicle.
- AVM provides driving assistance convenience, but the object in the image does not reflect the actual size and obstacle distance. Comparing with the actual image, the image has a little delay and blind spot. Therefore, the panoramic view function is not a substitute for driver's operation and judgment. Driver should pay attention to the surroundings and drive safely during turning on/off and using the function.

Switching view

Enter panoramic view monitor, touch back button to exit panoramic view monitor setting.

Enter panoramic view monitor, touch 2D/3D button to switch 2D/3D angle.

Enter panoramic view monitor, touch front/rear wide angle button to switch front/rear wide angle.

Enter panoramic view monitor, touch "● " button to switch to corresponding view.

Enter panoramic view monitor, touch shortcut button on the right of panoramic view monitor to enter panoramic view monitor setting.

READ

AVM is very helpful for parking and safety driving. It is recommended that you should be familiar with this function in an open and convenient area.

CAUTION

- Do not scratch the lens when cleaning dirt or snow on the camera surface.
- Do not place any object on the camera of AVM.
- The object distance seen on the AVM is different from the actual distance.
- Before using AVM, make sure to extend outside rear view mirrors and close the back door firmly.
- AVM has been calibrated professionally before leaving the factory. Any removal/installation and changes on camera installation position and angle without permission may affect the function and effect of AVM.
- AVM provides driving assistance convenience, but the object in the image does not reflect the actual size and obstacle distance. Comparing with the actual image, the image has a little delay and blind spot. Therefore, the panoramic view function is not a substitute for driver's operation and judgment. Driver should pay attention to the surroundings and drive safely during turning on/off and using the function.

System setting

OMT1D-4125

[AVM Start Animation] Click to start starting screen: When driver enters the panoramic view monitor system for the first time by panoramic view monitor button, panoramic view starting screen will be displayed.

[Auto Zoomin View] Click to turn on auto zoomin view: Enter zoomin view automatically based on obstacle distance.

[Door Opening Indication] Click to turn on door open view: Open front left/front right door to enter front left/front right door open view.

[Vehicle Trajectory] Click to turn on lane guideline display: Move shift lever to R to enter panoramic view monitor, load static/dynamic lane guideline and wheel track line.

[License Plate Number Display] Click to turn on license plate number display.

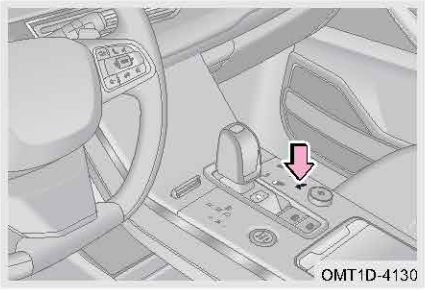
[Parking Radar Display] Click to turn on parking radar display.

[Default Setting Restoring] Click to restore default settings.

Parking Radar System (If Equipped)

Parking radar system is a radar detection device, adopts radar sensors (4 sensors or 8 sensors) to detect if there are obstacles from front/rear of vehicle. The driver is prompted by obstacles distance showed on audio head unit display and sound alarm, so as to assist the driver to park safely and easily.

Parking radar system switch (if equipped)



Click " P " switch (indicator comes on), parking radar system turns on; when shift lever is not in R, click "P " switch (indicator goes off) again to exit.

Note: When parking radar system is operating and vehicle speed is more than 15 km/h, " P " switch indicator goes off, it exits parking radar system; when speed is less than 15 km/h, it is necessary to click " P " switch (indicator comes on) again to reactivate the system.

READ

- Only models with 8 sensors are equipped with parking radar system switch.
- The interior designs are different depending on the configuration of the vehicle. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

Usage method

For models with 4 sensors: Turn vehicle power to ON mode, shift lever is moved to R position, parking radar system is activated; When a radar sensor detects an obstacle, audio head unit displays distance from obstacle (red, yellow, green areas) accompanied by alarm sound.

For models with 8 sensors: Turn vehicle power to ON mode, click "P " switch (indicator comes on) or shift lever is moved to R position, parking radar system is activated; When a radar sensor detects an obstacle, audio head unit displays distance from obstacle (red, yellow, green areas) accompanied by alarm sound.

Note: When radar sensor is malfunctioning, parking radar system will sound 2 seconds when it is turned on, when applying parking brake or shift lever is in P position, radar sensor malfunction warning will be shielded.

READ

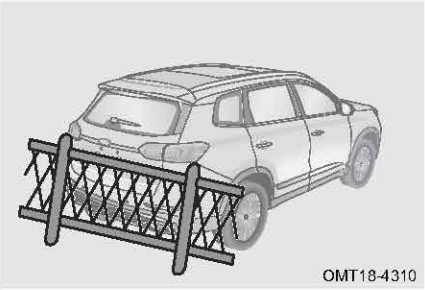
- Monitoring distance is the shortest vertical distance between obstacle and radar sensor.
- Under activating state of front radar, when applying parking brake or shift lever is in P position, audio head unit will only display arc information, and audio head unit prompt does not sound.
- For models with 8 sensors, move shift lever to R position to activate parking radar system (whether or not parking radar system is turned on before moving shift lever to R position), parking radar system still operates when shifting to other positions.

CAUTION

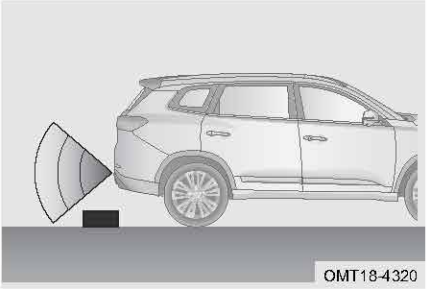
- For obstacles out of the detection range, radar sensors do not give a warning.
- When moving, be aware that the reverse radar sensors on the other side may get close to other obstacles.

Function limit

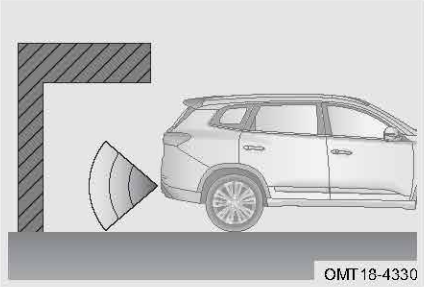
■ Parking radar system may not work normally in the following conditions:



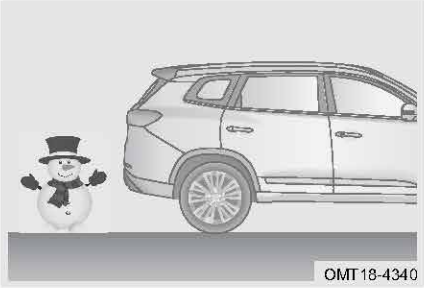
Radar sensors cannot detect thin objects such as wires, fences and ropes, etc.



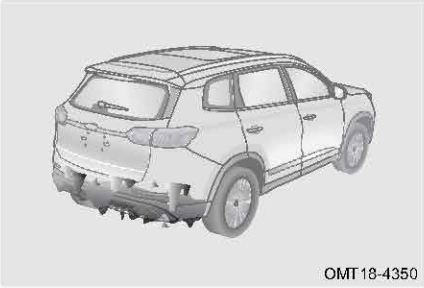
Radar sensors cannot detect low objects such as rocks, etc.



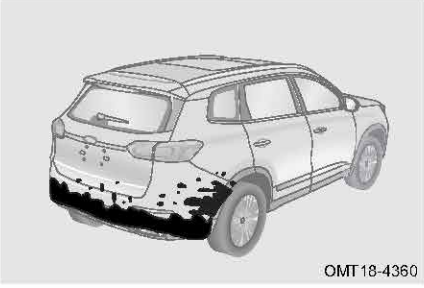
Radar sensors may not detect objects that are higher than bumper.



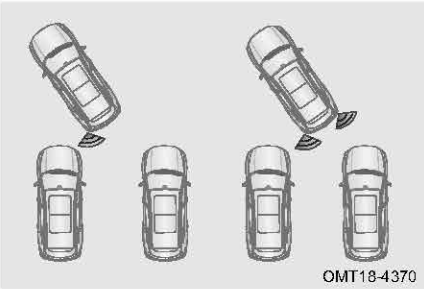
Radar sensors cannot detect objects that easily absorb ultrasonic waves such as soft snow, cotton, sponge, etc.



When radar sensor surfaces are frozen, they will not detect any obstacle.



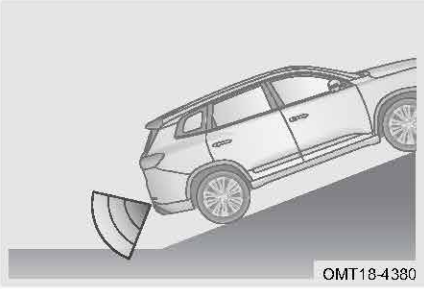
When radar sensors are covered by dirt, snow or mud, they may not detect obstacles.



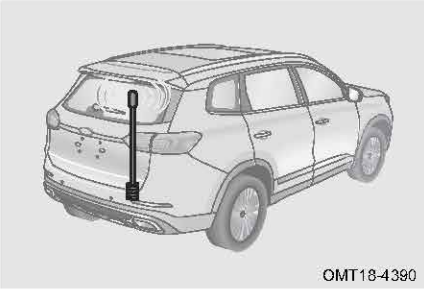
If obstacles are detected by more sensors, the distances between sensors and obstacles are displayed on instrument cluster simultaneously, and system sounds according to nearest obstacle.

⚠ CAUTION

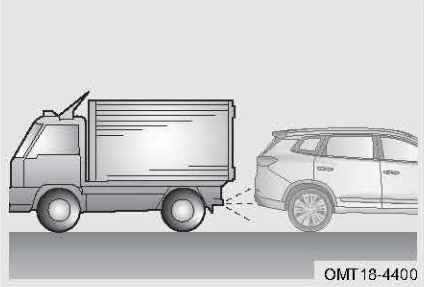
- For obstacles out of the detection range, radar sensors do not give a warning.
- When moving, be aware the reversing radar sensors on the other side may get close to other obstacles.



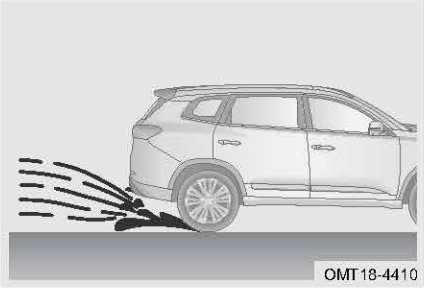
When vehicle is on a steep slope.



When vehicle is equipped with a high frequency radio or antenna is in use.



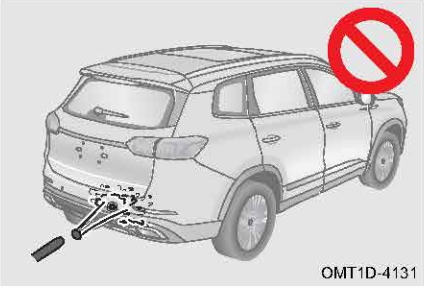
When there is loud noise near the vehicle, such as vehicle horns, motorcycle engines, air brakes of large vehicles, or other loud noises producing ultrasonic waves.



When driving in jelly-like snow or in rain.

Cleaning radar sensor

When washing vehicle, use a soft cloth or water (low water pressure) to wash off foreign matter such as snow, mud, and dust on the surface of the radar sensor.



High pressure water flow such as water guns or large external force may cause damage to the radar sensors. Do not pinch or impact the radar sensors, or it may be resulting in abnormal operation.

If the buzzer does not sound when reversing, please check the followings:

- If there is foreign matter on the surface of radar sensor.
- Radar sensors cannot detect wires and fences. Check if radar sensor surface is frozen.
- If the vehicle has been parked for a long time in hot or cold weather.
- If cause cannot be found, please contact Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

5-12. Braking Force Control System

Electronic Stability Program (ESP) System

ESP keeps vehicle stability when oversteering or understeering. When oversteering or understeering is detected, system applies brake to one or more wheels to enhance control of vehicle stability. ESP also extends some functions (such as ABS and EBD, etc.) to ensure the lateral stability during vehicle driving.

READ

Turning on/off of ESP should be set in instrument cluster. For details, refer to "Instrument Cluster".

Electronic Stability Program (ESP) system indicator

During turning off, "" yellow indicator in instrument cluster remains on.

During operation, "" yellow indicator in instrument cluster blinks.

When there is a fault, "" yellow indicator in instrument cluster remains on.

WARNING

- When ESP is malfunctioning, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- Even when ESP is working, high speed driving, sharp turns or poor road conditions can cause an accidents.
- ESP function does not completely ensure that you can take over vehicle if it is lost control under various extreme situations. Even with ESP, always follow laws and regulations to avoid accidents.

Function limit

■ Under the following conditions, ESP needs to be turned off:

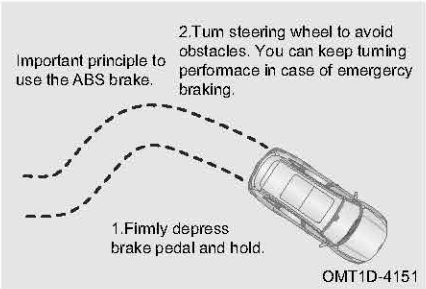
1. When driving with tire chains.
2. When starting vehicle on power tester.
3. When driving on roads with deep snow or loose roads.

READ

To improve vehicle traction when driving on sand or gravel, it is recommended to turn ESP off.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

ABS can prevent wheel from being locked in excessive braking or braking on the slippery road, avoiding vehicle sideways slippage or vehicle drifting and keeping vehicle stability.



ABS does not function during normal braking and it will be turned on immediately only during sudden braking (brake pedal pulsates with noise, ensuring brake performance and steering performance, if the space is enough, the vehicle can also avoid obstacles). Never release brake pedal in this case.

⚠ WARNING

- Always drive carefully and make sure to decelerate during turning.
- When ABS is malfunctioning, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- Although ABS can ensure the best braking effect, braking distance will vary largely due to road conditions.
- Also, ABS cannot eliminate risks arising from close-following driving, wading, turning quickly or driving on poor road surfaces and cannot avoid accidents caused by inattentive or inappropriate driving.
- ABS cannot ensure that brake distance can be shorted in any situations, vehicle equipped with tire chains, on sand or snow covered roads, may require a longer braking distance compared to vehicles without ABS.

Anti-lock brake system (ABS) indicator

When there is a fault, "ABS" yellow indicator in instrument cluster remains on.

⚠ WARNING

If ABS malfunction indicator and brake system malfunction indicator remain on at the same time, park your vehicle on a safety place far away from traffic main artery and go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

Function limit

■ ABS will make operation sound in following conditions:

1. Rebounding sound of brake pedal.
2. Impacting sound between suspension and vehicle body due to emergency braking.
3. Operation sound of motor, solenoid valve and return pump in hydraulic unit.
4. Operation sound of solenoid valve when EBD is intervened in braking.
5. It will drone for a short time after vehicle is powered on or engine is started, indicating system self-test is performed.

■ Always maintain a safe distance from vehicle ahead in the following situations:

1. When driving on rough roads.
2. When driving on roads with potholes or uneven surfaces.
3. When driving with tire chains.
4. When driving on dirt, gravel or snow-covered roads.

⚠ CAUTION

Tire size, specification and tread pattern wear will seriously affect ABS performance. Tire used to replace should have same size, load capacity and structure as original one. When tire is abnormal, it is recommended to replace with an original type at Chery authorized service station.

⚠ WARNING

- When driving in rainy day, properly control the vehicle speed, if wheel spins or slips, ABS will cannot control the vehicle.
- Although ABS can help to control vehicle, make sure to drive carefully, maintain a moderate speed and keep safe distance from preceding vehicles. There are certain limitations in vehicle stability and steering wheel operation effect even ABS operates.

Extended Function

Electric Brake Force Distribution (EBD) system

EBD system automatically adjusts braking force distribution ratio of front and rear axles according to axial load transfer difference caused by braking to improve braking efficiency. In addition, EBD works together with ABS to improve braking stability. Also, when braking in corner, brake force of inside and outside wheel can be adjusted to improve braking stability.

Traction Control System (TCS)

During starting off or rapidly acceleration, drive wheels may slip. In case of on a slippery road such as snowy or icy road, direction could get out of control and cause dangerous. When TCS detects that driven wheel speed is lower than drive wheel speed (a kind of wheel slip symptom) using sensor, it sends a signal to adjust ignition timing, reduce throttle opening, decelerate, downshift or brake wheels so that wheel no longer slips.

Hill Hold Control (HHC) system

HHC system can prevent vehicle from moving backward when starting off on uphill. After vehicle is stationary, HHC system adopts longitudinal acceleration sensor to determine if the vehicle is on a slope. When vehicle starts from stationary state on a slope to drive or reverse upwards, HHC system automatically operates. When starting off, after driver releases brake pedal, system maintains previous braking pressure for 1 to 2 seconds to hold the vehicle. As increasing of drive torque, brake pressure reduces gradually, avoiding accidents caused by moving backward when starting off on a slope.

Emergency Brake Assist (EBA) system

EBA system is used to shorten the braking distance in emergency braking. In an emergency, driver usually brakes in time, but generally does not apply the maximum braking force, thus lengthening braking distance. In this case, EBA system will operate: When driver depresses brake pedal rapidly in an emergency with insufficient force, EBA system quickly increases brake pressure to maximum level, making anti-lock brake system to short braking distance more quickly and effectively.

Drag Torque Control (DTC)

In normal driving, if accelerator pedal is released quickly or the shift lever is shifted to lower gear by mistake, vehicle will produce a similar braking effect, especially on slippery road, the wheel will lock up. At this time, ESP will request engine to increase torque output, resume rotation of drive wheels, improving steering stability.

Roll Movement Intervention (RMI) system

RMI system is used to prevent vehicle from rolling over on road when operating vehicle in dynamic (such as lane change) state.

Brake Assist System (BAS)

Generates an increased level of braking force after the brake pedal is depressed when the system detects a panic stop situation.

Brake Override System (BOS)

When the accelerator and brake pedals are depressed at the same time, the engine output may be restrained.

6-1. Basic Knowledge of Vehicle Emergency

Emergency Rescue (If Equipped) 268

Hazard Light..... 269

Reflective Vest..... 269

Warning Triangle..... 270

Spare Tools..... 270

6-2. Vehicle Emergency Handling

If You Have a Flat Tire During Driving..... 270

If Engine Coolant Temperature is High 275

If Battery is Depleted 276

If Your Vehicle Cannot Start Normally..... 278

6-3. Towing

Towing Vehicle..... 279

Emergency Towing..... 280

Installing Towing Eyelet..... 281

6-4. Fuse

Fuse Box 282

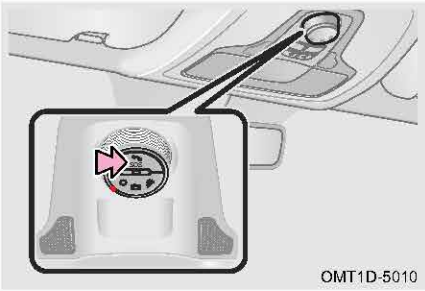
Checking Fuse..... 283

Replacing Fuse..... 283

6-1. Basic Knowledge of Vehicle Emergency

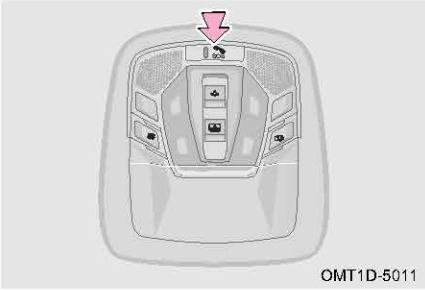
Emergency Rescue (If Equipped)

■ ECALL (type A)



ECALL is a kind of emergency call function. When vehicle is involved in a certain level of impact (airbag inflated) or when driver or passenger is in an emergency and rescue is required, emergency information can be sent to service center by operating button manually, then the center will track vehicle location and promptly offer rescue according to received information.

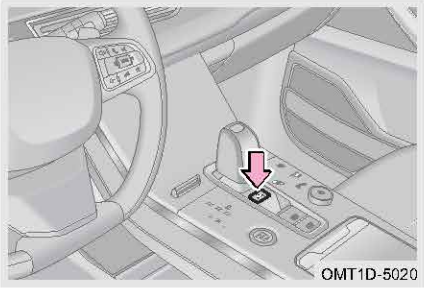
■ ECALL (type B)



ECALL is a kind of emergency call function. When vehicle is involved in a certain level of impact (airbag inflated) or when driver or passenger is in an emergency and rescue is required, emergency information can be sent to service center by operating button manually, then the center will track vehicle location and promptly offer rescue according to received information.

READ
The interior designs are different depending on the configuration of the vehicle. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

Hazard Light



In case of vehicle failure or traffic accident etc., please turn on the hazard lights to warn other vehicles to avoid the secondary accident.

Press hazard light switch, turn signal lights flash and the turn signal light indicator on instrument cluster flashes at the same time; Press the switch again, turn signal lights and indicator will turn off.

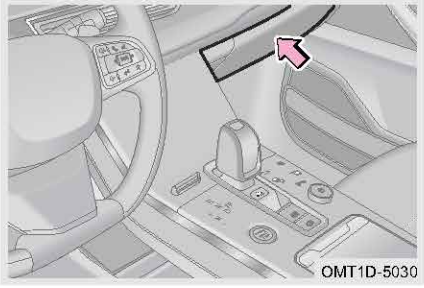
READ

- The interior designs are different depending on the configuration of the vehicle. Please refer to the actual vehicle.
- The hazard light can still work when the vehicle power is turned to OFF mode.
- The hazard light is automatically activated when the airbag (SRS) is operating.
- The settings are different depending on the interior of the vehicle. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

Emergency braking alarm function

When brake pedal is depressed in emergency at medium/high speed, the turn signal lights and turn signal light indicator on instrument cluster flash quickly; Release the brake pedal, press the hazard light switch or turn the vehicle power to OFF mode, the turn signal lights and turn signal light indicator on instrument cluster will stop flashing.

Reflective Vest



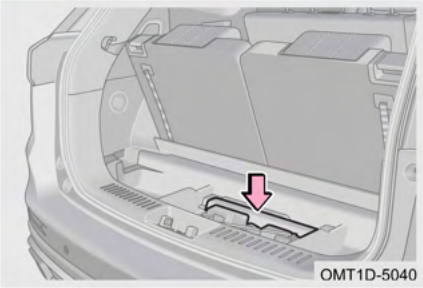
The reflective vest is placed in the glove box.

In case of vehicle failure or traffic accident etc., wear the reflective vest with reflective strip facing outwards. Its reflective performance can warn other vehicles to avoid secondary accidents.

READ

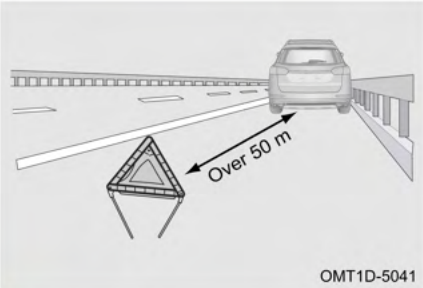
The interior designs are different depending on the configuration of the vehicle. Please refer to the actual vehicle.

Warning Triangle


OMT1D-5040

Warning triangle is located under the luggage compartment carpet.

In case of vehicle failure or traffic accident etc., the reflective performance of warning triangle can warn other vehicles to avoid secondary accidents.



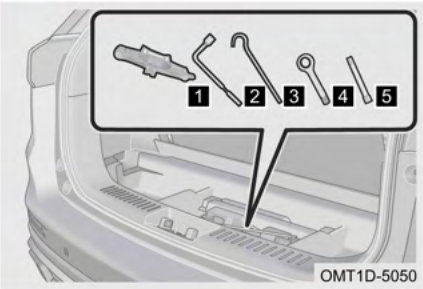
OMT1D-5041

Place the warning triangle at a distance of more than 50 m behind the vehicle on a normal road.

Place the warning triangle at a distance of more than 150 m behind the vehicle on the highway.

Place the warning triangle at a distance of over 150 m behind the vehicle in rain or when steering.

Spare Tools



OMT1D-5050

1 Jack
2 Wheel bolt wrench
3 Jack rocker
4 Towing eyelet
5 Wheel wrench extension rod

READ

Some models are equipped with tire pressure gauge, fire extinguisher and first-aid packet.

6-2. Vehicle Emergency Handling

If You Have a Flat Tire During Driving

If a tire goes flat during driving, slow down gradually, grip the steering wheel with two hands and keep driving straightly. Stop vehicle to a safe place away from the traffic road.

1. Preparations before replacing flat tire.

   Step 1: Stop vehicles on solid, level ground;

   Step 2: Apply parking brake and shift the shift lever to P (for A/T models) or N (for M/T models);

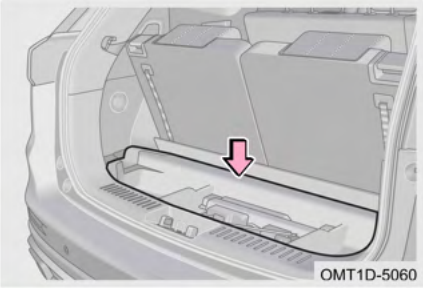
   Step 3: Turn vehicle power to OFF mode, and turn on hazard lights;

   Step 4: Have everyone get out of vehicle, pull over and stay away from traffic;

   Step 5: Wear reflective strip, and place the warning triangle 50 m - 150 m behind the vehicle (depending on actual condition).

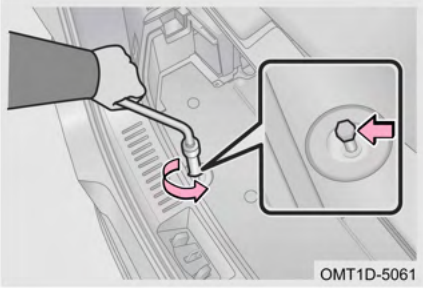
⚠ CAUTION
Do not continue driving with a flat tire. Driving even a short distance with a flat tire can damage the tire beyond repair.

2. Taking out spare tire.

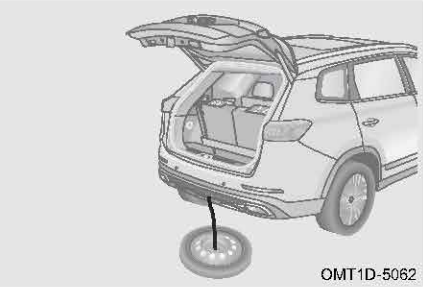


Step 1: Open back door, lift the luggage compartment carpet and take out luggage compartment storage box;

⚠ CAUTION
Take care to use spare tools when removing spare tire to prevent interior from being scratched or damaged.



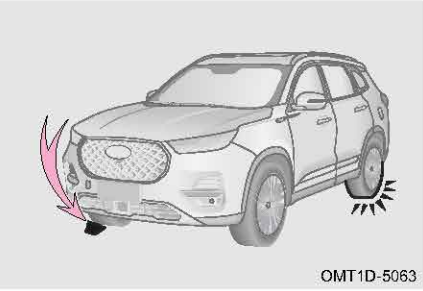
Step 2: Insert the wheel wrench extension rod into spare tire fixing bolt;
Step 3: Counterclockwise rotate extension rod to release spare tire with wheel bolt wrench;



Step 4: Take out spare tire fixing device hook and spare tire when spare tire is lowered to the lowest position.

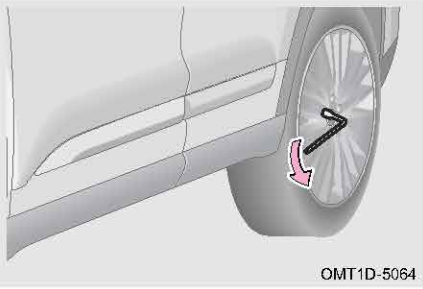
Note: Stow the replaced tire in the opposite method after installing spare tire.

3. Remove the flat tire.



Step 1: Put a block under the tire diagonally opposite to flat tire to prevent vehicle from rolling;

Flat Tire	Wheel Block Position
Front left wheel	Behind rear right wheel
Front right wheel	Behind rear left wheel
Rear left wheel	Behind front right wheel
Rear right wheel	Behind front left wheel



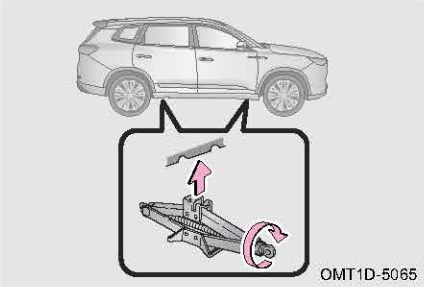
Step 2: Fit wheel bolt wrench to wheel bolt of flat tire, set the handle on left side, hold the end of wrench handle and push it downward, loosen each bolt of flat tire about one-half turn;

⚠ CAUTION

When removing wheel bolts by wheel bolt wrench, avoid wheel bolt wrench dropping off from bolt abnormally as much as possible, otherwise, wheel bolts will be damaged easily.

⚠ WARNING

Do not remove the bolts completely. Otherwise, wheel may drop off because of the vehicle pressure, causing personal injury.



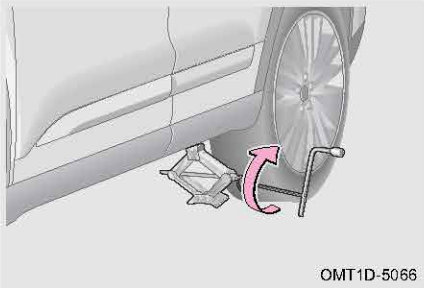
Step 3: Place jack on firm and level ground, turn jack handle clockwise by hand, making the notch of jack contact with the correct jacking-up point;

READ

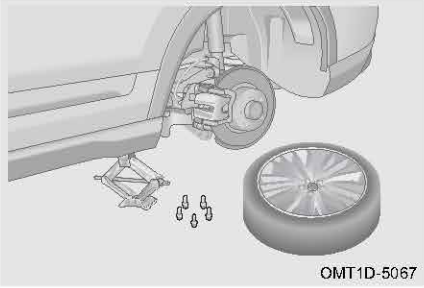
- Jack rated load: 1,200 kg.
- Jack the vehicle to a proper height at which tire can be replaced just.

WARNING

Never put any part of body under the vehicle when vehicle is jacked up to avoid personal injury.



Step 4: When the notch of jack contacts correct jacking-up point, fit jack rocker into jack, and wheel bolt wrench into jack rocker, and turn the wheel bolt wrench clockwise to jack up the vehicle;

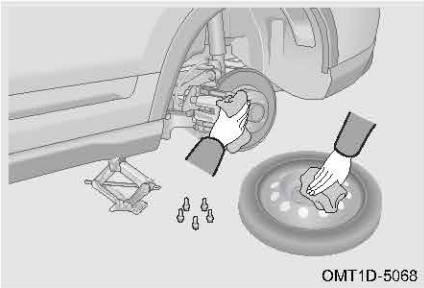


Step 5: Remove the wheel bolts of flat tire counterclockwise with the wheel bolt wrench, and remove the flat tire.

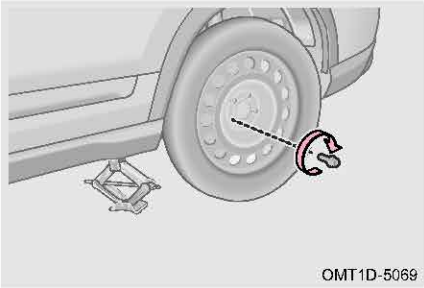
CAUTION

Place the flat tire on ground with rim facing upward, avoid scratching the rim surface.

4. Install the spare tire.

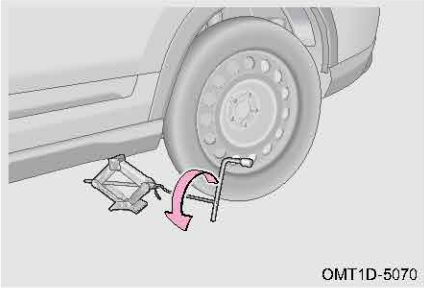


Step 1: Remove any attachments from mounting surface. Make sure wheel hub well contacts with wheel surface, and install spare tire;

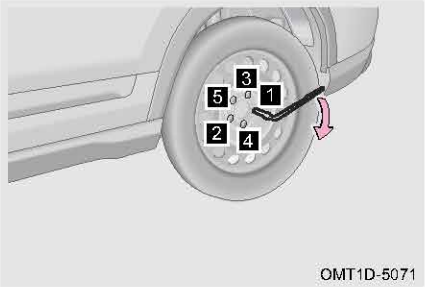


Step 2: When installing wheel bolts, screw into all wheel bolts clockwise by hands. Then straighten the spare tire, and pretighten all wheel bolts with wheel bolt wrench;

⚠ CAUTION
Do not apply oil or grease on wheel bolts.



Step 3: Make sure all persons around the vehicle stay in the safe area, fit jack rocker into jack, and wheel bolt wrench into jack rocker, and turn wheel bolt wrench counterclockwise to lower the vehicle;



Step 4: Using wheel bolt wrench, tighten bolts in sequence shown in illustration. Repeat the process 2 to 3 times to ensure that wheel bolts are tightened in place;

Step 5: Stow the flat tire and place jack, warning triangle and spare tools in original place;

Step 6: If the tire inflation pressure of spare tire is insufficient, drive vehicle slowly to the nearest Chery authorized service station to inflate tire to correct pressure.

⚠ WARNING

- Drive at specified speed of 80 km/h or less with a non-full size spare tire, it is not designed for driving at high speeds. Failure to observe this precaution may lead to an accident causing death or serious injury.
- Tighten wheel bolts to 130 ± 10 N·m after replacing the non-full size spare wheel. Drive slowly to the nearest authorized service station (-advised distance: ⩽ 80 km) to replace with a standard tire. Otherwise, the wheels may fall off due to loose bolts.
- The vehicle becomes lower when driving with non-full-size spare tire compared to when driving with standard tires. Be careful when driving over uneven road surfaces.
- Spare tire is designed only for emergency use and should be used only for very short periods. It should never be used for long drives or extended periods.
- Remember that the non-full-size spare tire provided is specifically designed for use with your vehicle. Do not use your spare tire on another vehicle.
- Do not use more than one spare tires simultaneously.
- Replace the spare tire with a standard tire as soon as possible.
- Avoid sudden acceleration, abrupt steering, sudden braking and shifting operations that cause sudden engine braking.

If Engine Coolant Temperature is High

If the engine coolant temperature is high during driving, and engine coolant temperature gauge approaching H area or "" red indicator on instrument cluster comes on, please stop vehicle to a safe place away from the traffic road.

Step 1: Stop vehicles on solid, level ground;

Step 2: Apply parking brake and shift the shift lever to P (for A/T models) or N (for M/T models);

Step 3: Turn off A/C system (water dripping from air conditioning after use is normal);

Step 4: Turn vehicle power to OFF mode after idling for several minutes, and turn on hazard lights;

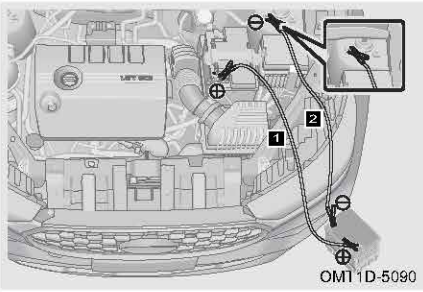
Step 5: Before opening the hood, check whether there is steam or coolant overflow or leakage. Only open hood when there is no steam or coolant overflow or leakage, otherwise, burns may occur;

Step 6: Check the coolant level, if reason is unclear, please contact Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately;

> ⚠ CAUTION
>
> If the engine overheats frequently, please contact Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
>
> If the coolant level is low, water can be used temporarily, please go to Chery authorized service station to replace coolant as soon as possible.

If Battery is Depleted

Jump-starting



Step 1: Turn vehicle power to OFF mode, and connect jumper cables;

1 Connect one end of positive cable to positive terminal (+) of battery of discharged vehicle, and the other end to the positive terminal (+) of battery on rescue vehicle.

2 Connect one end of negative cable to negative terminal (-) of battery on rescue vehicle, and the other end to unpainted metal part of discharged vehicle.

Step 2: Start the engine of rescue vehicle, slightly increase engine speed and maintain for approximately 5 minutes to temporarily charge the battery of discharged vehicle;

Step 3: If the discharged vehicle is still unable to start, check whether the jumper cable is connected normally, and then charge the battery;

Step 4: Once the engine is started on discharged vehicle, remove jumper cables in the reverse order of connection (negative cable first and then the positive cable).

Note: Jump starting is only used to models with conventional battery (12 V).

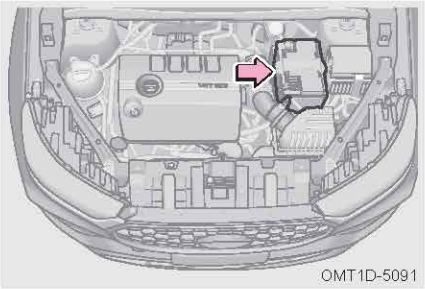
⚠ CAUTION

- If the battery is lack of power frequently, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- The negative terminal of battery on rescue vehicle should not be directly connected to negative terminal of battery on discharged vehicle.
- Do not jump start unless you are sure that the battery voltage for jumper starting is 12 - 13 V.
- When connecting and removing jumper cables, ensure that they do not become entangled in fan, belt, etc.
- Ensure that the jumper cables are properly connected and keep a certain distance between terminals, to prevent the jumper cables from touching each other or touch other metal parts of the vehicle.
- Before turning off vehicle power or locking the vehicle, make sure that the electrical appliances of vehicle are turned off, to prevent the vehicle from being unable to start normally due to battery power loss.

⚠ WARNING

- The specified jumper cables should be used.
- Do not smoke, use matches, cigarette lighters or allow open flame near the battery.
- if you are unsure about how to follow the procedure, Chery strongly recommends that you seek help from professional serviceman or Chery authorized service station.

Replacing battery



Step 1: Vehicle power is turned to OFF mode;

Step 2: Open the hood;

Step 3: Remove the negative (-) battery terminal cable;

Step 4: Remove the positive (+) battery terminal cable;

Step 5: Remove the battery holder and the battery;

Step 6: Install a new battery that has the same specification as the used one;

Step 7: Install the new battery properly in the reverse order of removing.

Note: Your vehicle is equipped with a maintenance-free battery. The new battery should have the same specifications with the genuine one. We advice you to go to Chery authorized service station for battery replacement.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

Battery contain acid which is poisonous and corrosive. Please deal with it according to the local regulations and provisions regarding environmental protection.

CAUTION

While removing battery, be careful to avoid the metal tool contacting both battery terminals or touching the positive (+) battery terminal and body at the same time.

WARNING

- Do not leave battery within the reach of children.
- Do not smoke, use matches, cigarette lighters or allow open flame near the battery.
- Always wear gloves and safety glasses during operation, as battery contain acid which is poisonous and corrosive. Do not lean the battery.
- If acid spills on your skin or clothes, the liquid must be neutralized with alkaline water (such as: soap) immediately, and then wash it with clean water. Get emergency medical attention immediately if necessary.

If Your Vehicle Cannot Start Normally

If your vehicle cannot start normally, first make sure you have followed the correct starting procedures and check if fuel is sufficient.

■ Starter speed is too low, but vehicle cannot start normally

Step 1: Check if battery terminals are tight and clean;

Step 2: Turn on headlights. If the light is dim, it indicates that the battery is discharged. Please try jump starting;

Step 3: Try to start engine again, if it still cannot start normally, the starting system may be malfunctioning. Please contact Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

■ Starter speed is normal, but vehicle cannot start normally

Step 1: Turn vehicle power to OFF or ACC mode, try to start the engine again;

Step 2: If the engine still cannot be started normally, it may cause excessive fuel in cylinder due to repeat starting. Turn vehicle power to OFF mode, try to start engine again after a few minutes;

Step 3: Try to start engine again, if it still cannot start normally, please contact Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

⚠ CAUTION

- To avoid damage to the starter, starting operation should not exceed 15 seconds each time.
- If vehicle becomes difficult to start or stalls frequently, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

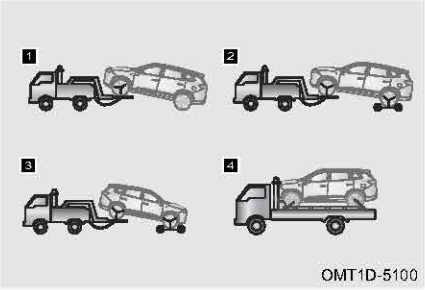
6-3. Towing

Towing Vehicle

Towing must comply with state/provincial and local laws about towing.

Before towing the vehicle, release parking brake (for details of emergency releasing electric parking, refer to "3-5. Brake System"), and shift the shift lever to N.

Correct towing methods



1 For front-wheel drive vehicles: Tow with a wheel lift-type truck from front, and secure the vehicle firmly.

2 For front-wheel drive, rear-wheel drive and 4WD vehicles: When towing with a wheel lift-type truck from front, use a towing dolly under the rear wheels, and secure the vehicle firmly.

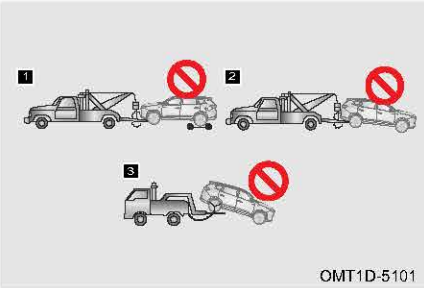
3 For front-wheel drive, rear-wheel drive and 4WD vehicles: When towing with a wheel lift-type truck from behind, use a towing dolly under the front wheels, and secure the vehicle firmly.

4 For front-wheel drive, rear-wheel drive and 4WD vehicles: When towing with a flatbed truck, secure the vehicle firmly.

⚠ CAUTION

- It is recommended to use flatbed truck for 4WD vehicles.
- Use a flatbed truck if the vehicle’s wheels or axle are damaged.
- Ensure that there is a proper clearance between the wheels not lifted and ground. Otherwise, the bumper and underbody of the towed vehicle will be damaged during towing.

Wrong towing methods



1 Tow with sling-type truck sling from front of the vehicle.

2 Tow with sling-type truck sling from rear of the vehicle whilst front wheels are on the ground.

3 Tow with wheel lift-type truck sling from rear of the vehicle whilst front wheels are on the ground.

⚠ CAUTION

Do not tow with a sling-type truck to prevent body damage.

Emergency Towing

If flatbed truck is not available during towing, your vehicle may be temporarily towed using a towing hook. This should only be attempted on hard surfaced road for short distances at low speed.

When using towing hook, driver must be in towed vehicle to operate steering wheel and brake pedal, and vehicle’ s wheels, drive train, axle, steering system and braking system must be in good condition.

Before emergency towing, release parking brake (for details of emergency releasing electric parking, refer to "Brake System"), shift the shift lever to N, and turn vehicle power to ACC/ON mode.

⚠ CAUTION

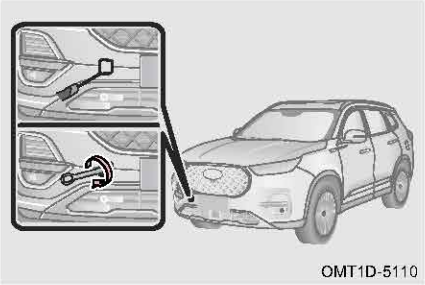
- Do not perform emergency towing for long periods of time.
- Never tow a vehicle heavier than this vehicle, otherwise the vehicle may be damaged.
- Secure a towing cable, chain or lever to the vehicle towing eyelet.
- Both drivers must be familiar with the towing process, otherwise they cannot carry out towing work.
- Tow vehicle as straightly ahead as possible, do not tow vehicle from side to avoid damaging vehicle.
- If engine is not started, assist system will not work, therefore, braking and steering will be more difficult than usual. Operate carefully.
- For towing of A/T models, Chery strongly recommends that you seek help from professional serviceman or Chery authorized service station.
- If towed vehicle still cannot move, do not forcibly continue towing to avoid secondary damage to vehicle. Chery strongly recommends that you seek help from professional serviceman or Chery authorized service station.

⚠ WARNING

- To avoid personal injury, people other than driver should stay away from the vehicle when it is towed.
- When towing vehicle, avoid sudden starts or erratic driving maneuvers which would apply excessive force on the towing eyelet, cable, chain or lever. The towing eyelet, cable, chain or lever may break and cause vehicle damage or serious personal injury.

Installing Towing Eyelet

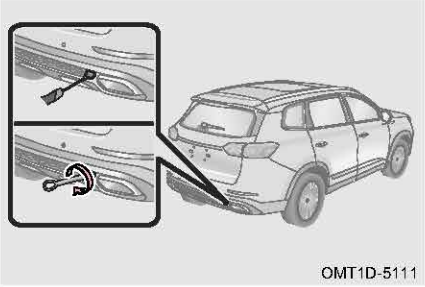
Front towing eyelet



Step 1: Use a flathead screwdriver with its tip taped to remove the front towing eyelet hole cover;

Step 2: Install towing eyelet into eyelet hole in a clockwise direction. Then tighten it firmly with wheel bolt wrench.

Rear towing eyelet



Step 1: Use a flathead screwdriver with its tip taped to remove the rear towing eyelet hole cover;

Step 2: Install towing eyelet into eyelet hole in a clockwise direction. Then tighten it firmly with wheel bolt wrench.

⚠ CAUTION

- Only use specified towing eyelet. Otherwise, vehicle may be damaged.
- Drive the vehicle slowly and smoothly when towing. Impact due to excessive tension may damage the vehicle.
- Towing rope or towing bar can be installed only when towing eyelet is installed in place.

⚠ WARNING

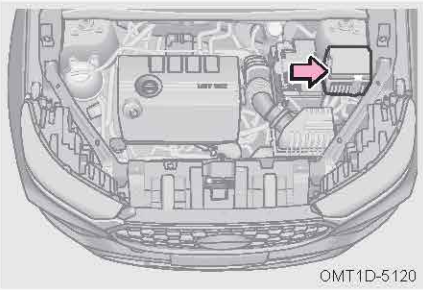
Make sure that towing eyelet is installed securely. Otherwise, the towing eyelet may come loose when towing, which may cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

6-4. Fuse

Fuse Box

Fuses are used to protect electrical components and circuits to avoid short circuit or overload. If fuse is blown, the protected components and systems will not work properly.

Front compartment fuse box

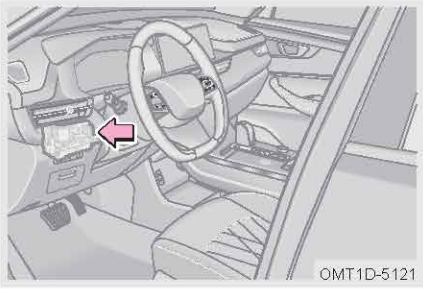


Step 1: Vehicle power is turned to OFF mode;

Step 2: Disconnect the negative battery terminal cable;

Step 3: Remove front compartment fuse box cover to inspect or replace fuse.

Instrument panel fuse and relay box



Step 1: Vehicle power is turned to OFF mode;

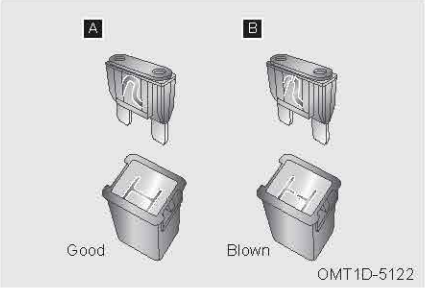
Step 2: Disconnect the negative battery terminal cable;

Step 3: Remove instrument panel lower left protector to inspect or replace fuse.

READ

- Check suspected fuses according to the fuse and relay box layout.
- The fuse box must be clean, keep it away from dampness when opening, as moisture may damage the electrical system.
- To prevent damage to the vehicle, be careful when removing/installing the instrument panel lower left protector. Please contact Chery authorized service station as necessary.

Checking Fuse



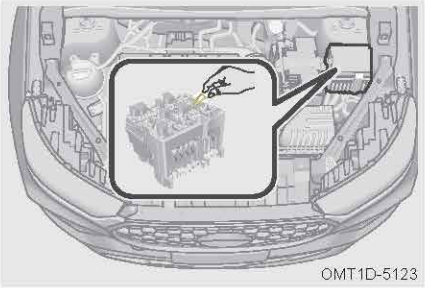
A Good fuse.

B Blown fuse.

READ

If the fuses are blown, they must be replaced.

Replacing Fuse



Step 1: Vehicle power is turned to OFF mode;

Step 2: Check fuses according to the fuse and relay box layout;

Step 3: Pull the suspected fuse out by a fuse remover;

Step 4: Check if the fuse is blown. If you are not sure whether the fuse has blown, replace the suspected fuse with spare fuse that has the same amperage rating. You can see the amperage rating on the schematic diagram inside the fuse box cover.

READ

If a spare fuse is unavailable, you can use a fuse with same specification from other unimportant electrical appliances in an emergency. It is better to purchase a set of spare fuses and put them in vehicle for emergency use.

CAUTION

- Do not modify fuses or fuse boxes.
- Only install a fuse that has the same amperage rating as used one. Never replace a fuse with a wire, even as a temporary replacement. Otherwise, this may cause serious damage to electrical appliances, or even fire.

7-1. Repair and Maintenance

Repair and Maintenance ... 286

Chery Authorized Service Station is at Your Service 286

Safety Check..... 287

7-2. Normal Maintenance

Normal Maintenance 288

Checking Oil Level 289

Checking Transmission Fluid Level 290

Checking Brake Fluid Level..... 290

Checking Coolant Level 291

Checking Radiator and Condenser..... 292

Checking Drive Belt..... 292

Checking Tires..... 293

Tire Rotation..... 294

Checking Battery..... 295

Checking Air Conditioning Filter 295

Checking Windshield Washer Fluid 295

Checking Wiper Blades..... 296

7-3. Regular Maintenance

First Maintenance Information..... 298

Maintenance Schedule 299

Technical Data 305

7-1. Repair and Maintenance

Repair and Maintenance

There are two types of repair and maintenance: one is normal maintenance, which can be done by the customers; the other is scheduled maintenance, inspection and repair, which needs to be completed by Chery authorized service station.

For the details of regular maintenance, inspection and repair methods, please refer to "Regular Maintenance" in this section; Regular maintenance can be helpful for you to found and eliminate potential dangers in time to prevent malfunctions. Scheduled maintenance of your vehicle is essential. Please strictly follow the maintenance schedule of "User Manual" to perform maintenance, ensuring that your vehicle maintains the best performance and good operating conditions, thus effectively extending the service life of the vehicle.

Please use the oil fluid recommended by Chery, or your vehicle may be damaged.

Chery Authorized Service Station is at Your Service

Chery authorized service station

Only OEM parts and materials can extend your vehicle's service life. Chery Automobile Co., Ltd. only supplies OEM parts to Chery authorized service station located worldwide. Therefore, only OEM parts of Chery authorized service station can be used.

Chery authorized service station is service professional and is exclusively authorized by Chery Automobile Co., Ltd. For vehicle service, please remember that your authorized service station knows your vehicle best, and has the professional technicians and OEM parts to satisfy your needs.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION
Used engine oil, brake fluid, coolant, steering fluid (if equipped), batteries and tires should only be disposed of by qualified waste disposal agencies or consulted with supporting manufacturers, and should not be taken out with household waste or discharged into the communal drainage system.

Service arrangements

When go to Chery authorized service station for vehicle service, make sure to carry all required documents. Not all the work to be performed is covered by the warranty. For detailed expenses, consult your service advisor. Keep a service record on your vehicle. Usually, this record can provides informations for later troubleshooting.

Prepare a list sheet covering vehicle malfunctions and specific service items. If you have had an accident or any item serviced is not included in the service records, let your service advisor know.

If you list many service items and you must fetch your vehicle on the day, communicate with your advisor to rank the items by priority.

Safety Check

It is better to perform safety check before driving vehicle, which can improve driving safety and let you enjoy driving pleasure.

⚠ WARNING
While inspecting vehicle, do not start the vehicle.

Daily check
Check whether paint surface is scratched, light shade is damaged, body is tilted, wheel bolts are missed or loosened, water/oil leakage of chassis occurs, door/hood/back door/glass is damaged.
Check that engine oil level, brake fluid level, coolant level, steering fluid level (if equipped) and windshield washer fluid level is normal.
Check cold tire pressure and conditions (such as: wear, swelling, aging cracks, mechanical damages, etc). Also check the spare tire.
Check whether seat belt buckles are locked securely. Make sure belts are not worn or frayed.
Check whether lighting of lights is normal.
Check whether meter indicators are normal.

Monthly check
Clean vehicle surface, inside of engine hood (dust on surface of radiator and condenser, and remaining oil of engine body), vehicle interior and luggage compartment.
Check assembly, pipes, hoses and tanks for leaks; Check whether battery and cable are corroded and loosened; Check whether circuits are damaged, loosened or disconnected; Check that water/oil leakage of chassis occurs.
Check whether air condition is operated properly.
Check whether parking brake is operated properly.
Check whether spare fuses and spare tools (such as: jack, wheel bolt wrench, etc.) are equipped.

READ

Used engine oil, brake fluid, coolant, batteries and tires can be disposed only by qualified waste disposal agencies, or consult supporting manufacturers for disposal of them. It is not allowed to discard them with household waste or discharge them into public drainage system.

7-2. Normal Maintenance

Normal Maintenance

Be sure to follow the correct maintenance procedures provided in this section if you perform do-it-yourself maintenance.

This section only lists the simple maintenance instructions which can be performed by customers. However, there are still many items that have to be maintained by qualified technicians with special tools.

CAUTION

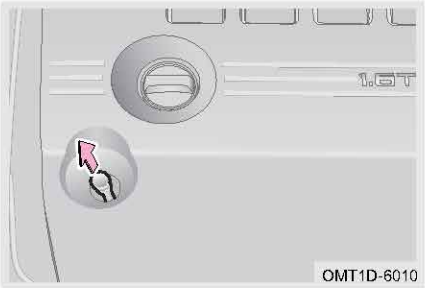
- Check if the tools, cotton, etc. are left in the cabin before closing the hood.
- Do not drive vehicle with the air filter removed, otherwise, excessive engine wear could occur.
- Correctly add fluid to the appropriate level. If some fluid splashes onto the vehicle, be sure to immediately wash it off with a wet cloth, to avoid damage to the painted surface.

WARNING

- If the engine is very hot, do not open the coolant reservoir cap to prevent scalding injury.
- When the engine is running, keep hands, clothing and tools away from engine drive belts and cooling fan.
- Do not smoke near fuel filler or battery, otherwise, it may cause sparks or open flames, resulting in a fire.
- There is a high voltage in the electronic ignition system. Do not touch these components while the engine is running or the vehicle power is turned on.
- Right after driving, engine, radiator, exhaust manifold and cylinder head will be very hot, so never touch them. Prevent the clothes (such as ties, etc.) from getting caught in the fan and causing personal injury because the cooling fan may automatically start and run at any time.

Checking Oil Level

Checking engine oil



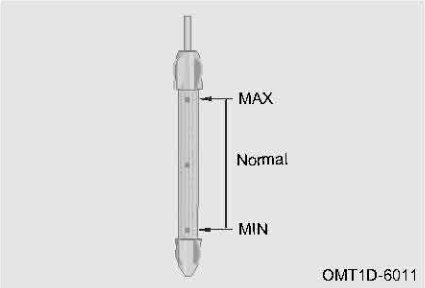
With the engine stalling and cooled down, check the oil level with the dipstick.

Step 1: Warm up the engine and then stop the vehicle on a level ground. Wait for approximately 5 minutes after turning off engine;

Step 2: Open the engine hood, pull out the dipstick and wipe it with a clean cloth;

Step 3: Insert the dipstick to the bottom uniformly and slowly;

Step 4: Leave the vehicle as is for approximately 3 seconds, pull out the dipstick again and check if oil level is proper.



Put a cloth under the dipstick to avoid oil spilling onto engine or vehicle body.

Do not check the oil level immediately after the engine warms up, and wait until the oil returns into the bottom of engine.

Adding engine oil

Step 1: Turn the engine oil filler cap counterclockwise to open it;

Step 2: Use the funnel to add a small amount of engine oil for several times and check the oil level with a dipstick again;

Step 3: When the level is within the correct range, turn the engine oil filler cap clockwise to tighten it.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

Do not discard the waste engine oil and filter in the household rubbish and sewer or on the ground. Otherwise, it will cause serious environmental pollution. Please dispose it according to the local regulations regarding to environmental protection.

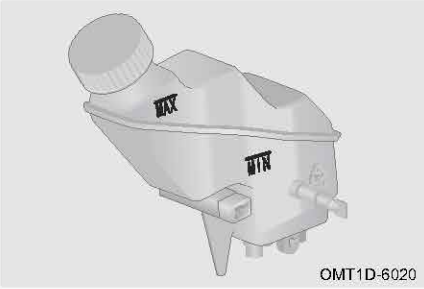
⚠ CAUTION

- Do not overfill oil, or it may cause damage to engine.
- Only engine oil recommended by Chery can be used. Otherwise, all the direct or indirect loss incurred are at customer’s own risk.
- If oil is accidentally spilled on the surface of the engine during refueling, clean the spilled oil with canvas and other tools before tightening the engine oil filler cap.
- The engine oil filler cap cannot be placed up side down after removal to prevent misjudgment caused by oil backflow, and prevent oil flowed through seal ring from overflowing by itself after assembly again, which results in an illusion of oil leakage from the engine oil filler cap.

Checking Transmission Fluid Level

Checking, adding and replacing of transmission fluid should be done by professionals, please contact Chery authorized service station.

Checking Brake Fluid Level



Brake fluid level should be between the "MIN" and "MAX" marks. If the level is in the "MIN" mark or below, add brake fluid and contact Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

⚠ CAUTION

- As the brake fluid has high water absorbability, do not leave the brake fluid reservoir cap open for a long period of time.
- Only brake fluid recommended by Chery can be used. Otherwise, all the direct or indirect loss incurred are at customer’s own risk.
- If some brake fluid splashes onto the painted surface of vehicle body, be sure to clean it with a wet sponge or wash it off with water to avoid corroding the parts or painted surface.

⚠ WARNING

Never allow brake fluid to contact your skin or eyes. If the brake fluid splashes into your eyes, or on your skin, flush the area immediately with a great quantity of water. Get emergency medical attention immediately if necessary.

Checking Coolant Level

Checking coolant

When engine is cold, the coolant level should be between the "MIN" and "MAX" marks. If the level is in the "MIN" mark or below, add coolant and contact Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

Adding coolant

Step 1: When the engine is cold, open the coolant reservoir cap, and add coolant until reaching "MAX" mark;

Step 2: Start and run the engine to a normal temperature. Observe the coolant level in the reservoir all the time. If the level falls below "MIN" mark, add coolant to an appropriate level until the coolant level does not fall down further;

Step 3: Turn off engine and check if coolant level is correct after engine cools down. If not, repeat above operations until level is normal;

Step 4: Install the coolant reservoir cap into place.

⚠ CAUTION

- If coolant level falls down too fast, check radiator, water hose and water pump for leakage.
- Only brake fluid recommended by Chery can be used. Otherwise, all the direct or indirect loss incurred are at customer's own risk.

⚠ WARNING

- When engine is hot, the cooling system will be under high pressure. In this case, do not open the coolant reservoir cap, otherwise, the escaping steam may cause scalding injury.
- The coolant is poisonous, so pay extreme caution not to spray the liquid on any part of the vehicle, human body or ground when adding coolant. If the coolant accidentally gets onto your skin or into eyes, please wash the affected area with a great quantity of water. Get emergency medical attention immediately if necessary.

Checking Radiator and Condenser

After the vehicle runs for a period of time, the front surface of condenser and radiator could be blocked with some insects, leaves and other objects, which could affect the performance of air conditioning and cooling system, resulting in air conditioning operating improperly and cooling system overheating. It is necessary to clean radiator and condenser at the time.

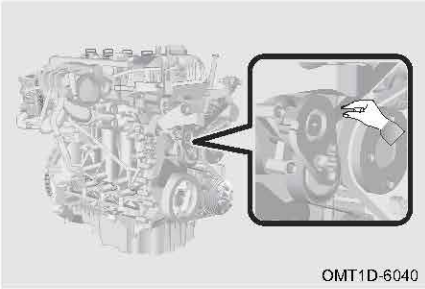
Condenser: Clean the condenser by blowing compressed air from rear to front through the radiator when the engine is turned off and cools down.

Radiator: It is recommended to clean the radiator surface every year. With engine turned off and cooled down, use compressed air or water to clean the radiator fins and blow off the insects and leaves, etc. Air and water pressure should not exceed 150 kPa. Otherwise, the radiator fins could be damaged.

⚠ CAUTION

- The material of radiator fins has good thermal conductivity, which is used to cool the coolant; Do not brush the fins, or it may cause damage to the fins, affecting the cooling effect.
- Do not spray water on the hot radiator while the engine is hot, otherwise, the generated high temperature steam may result in personal injury; Clean radiator when the engine is turned off and cools down.

Checking Drive Belt



Drive belt will be extended after using a period of time, and the belt tension is not enough, which may damage the vehicle, so it is necessary to regularly check the belt tension.

Step 1: Vehicle power is turned to OFF mode;

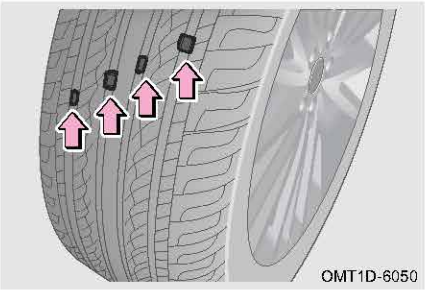
Step 2: Twist the belt with your fingers to check the rotation angle of belt;

Step 3: If rotation angle is more than 90°, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair.

⚠ WARNING

When checking the drive belt tension, turn off the engine and cool down to ensure that the engine belt is static.

Checking Tires



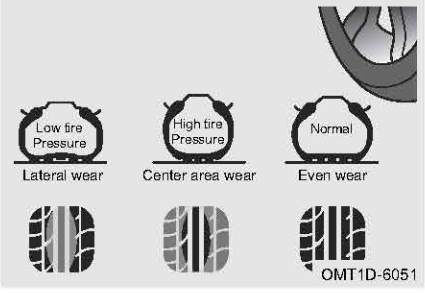
Check the tire tread for tread wear mark. When tread wear reaches its limit, tread will be in the same plane as the wear band. If such condition occurs, it indicates that performance and safety of tire seriously decrease, and replacement is necessary.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

Never discard a disposed tire carelessly. It should be handled according to the local regulations regarding to environmental protection.

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury:

1. Do not use tires that were used on another vehicle.
2. Do not mix tires with remarkably different tread wear.
3. Do not use tires if you do not know how they were used previously.
4. Do not mix tires with different manufacturers, models or tread patterns.
5. Do not mix differently constructed tires (such as radial, bias-belted or bias-ply tires).
6. Speedometer affects by tire size. If the tire size (diameter) is different from the genuine one, it will not display accurate speed, and may result in accidents, such accidents loss are not covered by the warranty.



Incorrect tire inflation pressure will lead to excessive fuel consumption, shorten the tire service life and reduce the vehicle stability. Therefore, you should drive the vehicle with proper tire pressure (For provisions about the tire inflation pressure, please refer to the tire pressure label on driver side B pillar). When cold tire inflation pressure is higher than specified value or economic tire pressure is used, driving comfort will be reduced accordingly. Please adjust it according to your needs.

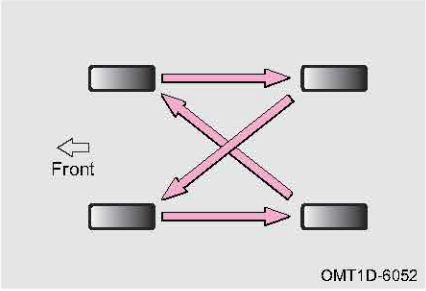
■ Be sure to keep proper tire inflation pressure. Otherwise, the following conditions may occur and result in in death or serious injury:

1. Excessive wear.
2. Poor handling.
3. Uneven wear.
4. Poor sealing of the tire bead.
5. Wheel deformation or tire separation.
6. Possibility of blowouts resulting from overheated tires.
7. A greater possibility of tire damage caused by poor road conditions.

CAUTION

- It is normal that the tire inflation pressure increases after driving for a period of time.
- If the tire needs to be inflated frequently, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- If a tire often leaks or cannot be properly repaired due to a cut or other damages, it should be replaced.
- Use a tire pressure gauge to check cold tire inflation pressure. Visual inspection of a tire may cause inaccurate estimation on inflation pressure.
- If air leakage occurs while driving, do not continue to drive. Driving even a short distance can damage a tire beyond repair.
- Be sure to install tire valve caps properly. Otherwise, dirt could get into the valve core and cause blockage. If the caps are lost, install new ones as soon as possible.

Tire Rotation



To equalize tire wear and extend tire service life, Chery recommends that you should rotate your tires approximately every 10,000 km (best adjustment range is 5,000 - 7,000 km); the tire rotation cycle may vary according to your driving habits and road surface conditions.

READ

Tire rotation should be done by professionals, please contact Chery authorized service station.

Checking Battery

Check and make sure that the battery terminals are not corroded and that there are no loose connections, external cracks, or loose fixing clamps.

Your vehicle is equipped with a maintenance-free battery. The new battery should have the same specifications with the genuine one. We advice you to go to Chery authorized service station for battery replacement.

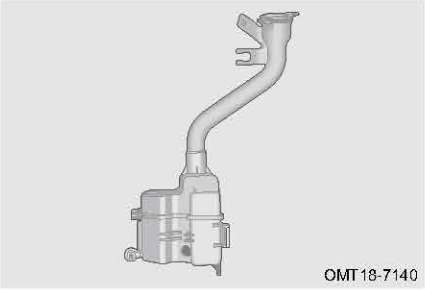
Checking Air Conditioning Filter

Air conditioning filter can prevent outside dust from entering vehicle through air conditioning outlets when driving for a long period of time, and it may be blocked after being used for a long time. If efficiency of air conditioning decreases significantly, check filter and replace it as necessary.

READ

- The replacement of air conditioning filter should be performed by professionals, please contact Chery authorized service station.
- Using air conditioning with filter removed may result in degradation of dustproof performance, affecting efficiency of air conditioning.
- A/C system for some models can achieve N95 protection, please subject to the actual vehicle.

Checking Windshield Washer Fluid

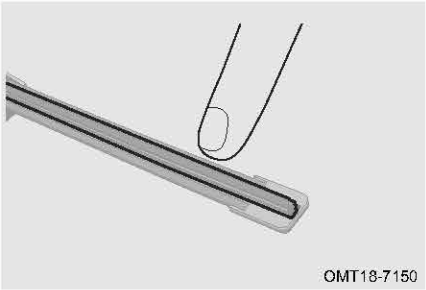


If no washer fluid can be sprayed from washer nozzles, stop operating washers and check if it is necessary to add washer fluid. If it cannot operate properly after adding washer fluid, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair.

CAUTION

- Never add antifreeze in the windshield washer fluid, because antifreeze will damage the body painted surface.
- Do not use water as washer fluid when temperature is below zero. Otherwise, water will be frozen, causing damage to washer.
- The capacity of washer fluid reservoir is 2 L or 4.5 L, please subject to the actual vehicle.

Checking Wiper Blades



Check the roughness of wiper blade by sliding on its edge using your finger. Wiper blade will not work effectively, if it is too rough.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not use the wiper blades to remove frost or ice covered on the windshield.
- When there are pits on the windshield that struck by gravel, please maintain it timely.
- In winter, make sure that the wiper blades are not frozen to the glass before operating them to avoid damaging the wiper blades.
- Butter, silicone and fuel may cause the wiper blades to operate improperly, and it is recommended to clean the wiper blades with washer fluid.
- When the blades are lifted for maintenance, the center connector position of the blades should be properly picked up, it is required to enter maintenance mode for some models (for details, please refer to "Wiper System").

Maintaining wiper blades

1. Do not use high-pressure water jet to directly wash the wiper blades while washing the vehicle, or the wiper blades could be deformed.
2. In order to prevent the formation of schlieren, it is recommended to clean wiper blades using glass detergent regularly once a week.
3. For safety, it is advised to replace the wiper blades once or twice a year, the wiper blades can be purchased at Chery authorized service station.
4. After washing the vehicle in the automatic car washer, apply pure water to rinse the windshield and blades, to remove the remaining wax layer.
5. Do not operate wipers when windshield is dry. Doing so may scratch glass, resulting in permanent damage to wiper blades.
6. Do not clean the windshield with fuel, nail polish remover, paint thinner or similar liquid, which can damage the wiper blades.
7. Avoid using glass plating agent and hydrophobic agent on the front and rear windshield glass. The hydrophobic layer will fall off slowly after using, resulting in uneven friction of windshield and abnormal noise of wiper shaking.

8. When the windshield surface is frosted or frozen, or when dry soil, insect, sticker or other solid particles are attached to the windshield surface, clean them with a wet cloth in time. Do not use a dry cloth or remove them with wiper blades directly, otherwise it will damage the glass and wiper blades.

Using wipers

1. Do not swing the wiper arm manually, otherwise it may damage the wiper.
2. When there is snow, leaves, branch and other objects, they should be cleaned before operating the wiper.
3. Washer fluid should be added on time, please use the windshield washer fluid as specified in this manual, and do not use tap water instead.
4. In cold weather, always check if the wiper blades are frozen on the windshield before using. If they are frozen on the windshield, always unfreeze before using. Use air conditioning heating and ventilation device to warm up. Do not pour hot water directly to blades, otherwise, windshield may break or wiper blades may deform.

7-3. Regular Maintenance

First Maintenance Information

Maintenance information for the first 5,000 km (within 6 months after purchasing vehicle) (for general area)				
Date: _____ Mileage: _____				
Type of jobs	1	Check lubrication system, cooling system and fuel system for leakage.	Y☐	N☐
	2	Replace engine oil and oil filter.	Y☐	N☐
	3	Check transmission fluid level and color. Add if necessary.	Y☐	N☐
	4	Check coolant level. Add coolant or adjust concentration if necessary.	Y☐	N☐
	5	Check transmission for leakage.	Y☐	N☐
	6	Check steering tie rod boot for damage.	Y☐	N☐
	7	Check propeller shaft constant velocity universal joint boot for damage.	Y☐	N☐
	8	Check brake fluid for leakage and brake pipes for damage.	Y☐	N☐
	9	Check if brake sub cylinders work normally.	Y☐	N☐
	10	Check if tire inflation pressure is as specified.	Y☐	N☐
	11	Check belt tension of alternator and A/C compressor. Adjust tension if necessary.	Y☐	N☐
	12	Check hood hinge and tab.	Y☐	N☐
	13	Check A/C system for leakage.	Y☐	N☐
	14	Check installation condition for steering universal joint boot and check for damage.	Y☐	N☐
	15	Check if gears of transmission shift smoothly.	Y☐	N☐
	16	Check coupling bolts between chassis and vehicle body for looseness.	Y☐	N☐
	17	Check seat belts for correct operation.	Y☐	N☐
	18	Check engine working condition, electronic injection parameters and emission while idling.	Y☐	N☐
	19	Check if mechanisms function properly by testing driving.	Y☐	N☐

Maintenance Schedule

The maintenance schedule lists vehicle maintenance items that need to be carried out. Please go to Chery authorized service station for maintenance according to mileage in maintenance schedule.

For general area, maintenance interval is 10,000 km or 12 months (whichever comes first) after first maintenance is performed.

If you vehicles always used in severe driving conditions, you should follow the maintenance requirement each 5,000 km or 6 months (whichever comes first).

Only Castrol oil (SN 5W-30; SP 5W-30) and Fuchs (C5 0W-20) can reach the maintenance requirement every 15,000 km or 1 year, Please follow the recommendation of Chery authorized service station.

I: Inspect, adjust, clean or replace if necessary; R: Replace.

For general driving conditions*											
Maintenance Item	Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
	Km×1,000	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100
For severe driving conditions*											
Maintenance Item	Months	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	54	60
	Km×1,000	5	10	15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50
Meter Indicating System		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Video and Entertainment System		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Diagnostic Tester Inspection		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Front Wiper Blades		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Rear Wiper Blades		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Wiper System		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Cooling Effect		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Air Conditioning System		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Air Conditioning Filter		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Coolant Level		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Freezing Point of Coolant		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I

For general driving conditions*											
Maintenance Item	Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
	Km×1,000	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100
For severe driving conditions*											
Maintenance Item	Months	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	54	60
	Km×1,000	5	10	15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50
Brake Fluid		It is recommended to replace every 2 years or 40,000 km (whichever comes first).									
Brake Fluid Level		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Water Content of Brake Fluid		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Engine Oil and Oil Filter		R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
Engine Oil Level		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Transmission Fluid (730DHB)		Replace every 60,000 km.									
Transmission Fluid and External Filter Assembly （738DHA）		Replace every 60,000 km.									
Transmission Fluid and External Filter Assembly (025CHC)		40,000 km for the first time, no need to replace after that									
Power Steering Fluid (If Equipped)		Replace every 2 year or 30,000 km (whichever comes first).									
Transfer gear oil (If Equipped)		Maintenance free.									
Rear final drive oil (If Equipped)		Maintenance free.									
Transmission Fluid Level		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Fuel Filter		External fuel filter: Replace every 30,000 km; Internal fuel filter: The integrated fuel pump is maintenance free type(troubleshoot the cause of failure).									
Battery Voltage		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Shock Absorber		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I

For general driving conditions*											
Mainte-nance Item	Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
	Km×1,000	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100
For severe driving conditions*											
Mainte-nance Item	Months	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	54	60
	Km×1,000	5	10	15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50
Propeller Shaft and Boot		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Torque of Chassis Bolt		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Steering Gear		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Steering Column		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Steering Link, Ball and Boot		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Tire Appearance		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Tire Pattern		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Tire Inflation Pressure		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Spare Tire Inflation Pressure		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Torque of Wheel Bolt		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Tire Rotation		It is recommended to rotate your tires every 10,000 km (the optimal adjustment range is 5,000 - 7,000 km).									
Spark Plug		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Brake Plate		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Air Filter		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Drive Belt		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Engine Oil Pan and Drain Bolts		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Transmission Housing Body		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Related Fluid Line(-such as steering, brake, fuel etc.) and Wire Harness		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I

For general driving conditions*											
Maintenance Item	Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
	Km×1,000	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100
For severe driving conditions*											
Maintenance Item	Months	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	54	60
	Km×1,000	5	10	15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50

Charcoal Canister Filter (If Equipped)	Replace every 3 years or 60,000 km (whichever comes first).
Timing Belt (If Equipped)	Replace every 3 years or 100,000 km (whichever comes first).
Timing Chain (If Equipped)	Maintenance-free (except for the cause of failure).
Battery	Maintenance-free (except for the cause of failure).
Throttle Valve	It is recommended to clean every 15,000 km.
Four-wheel Alignment	Check four-wheel alignment every 20,000 km and adjust if necessary.
Fuel Vapor Rubber Pipe	It is recommended to replace every 10 years or 500,000 km (whichever comes first).
Refueling Hose of Fuel	It is recommended to replace every 5 years or 200,000 km for products made of ordinary rubber (such as NBR+PVC/CSM, etc.) (whichever comes first); It is recommended to replace every 10 years or 500,000 km for products made of fluororubber (whichever comes first). It is recommended to replace the above hoses timely which may cause performance defect such as crack.

*: We recommend that you ask your Chery authorized service station for the actual maintenance schedule applied to your vehicle.

READ

- The frequency of scheduled inspection and maintenance services in the table is minimal. However, it may be necessary that they be performed more frequently depending on road conditions, weather, atmospheric conditions and vehicle usage. These conditions may differ from one country to another. Therefore, there may be special requirement in your country. We recommend that you ask your Chery authorized service station for the actual maintenance schedule applied to your vehicle.
- Continue periodic maintenance beyond 100,000 km or 120 months by returning to the third column of the maintenance schedule and adding 100,000 km or 120 months to the column headings.
- For special area, there may be special maintenance specifications. We recommend that you ask your Chery authorized service station for the actual maintenance specifications applied to your vehicle.

⚠ CAUTION

- The engine oil and oil filter should be replaced more frequently if the vehicle drives under severe conditions mentioned in the following examples*.
- It should be checked every 5,000 km or 6 months (whichever comes first) if the vehicle drives under severe conditions mentioned in the following examples*.
- The lubricant should be replaced every 5,000 km or 6 months (whichever comes first) if the vehicle drives in the following areas.
  - High humidity areas.
  - Mountainous areas.
  - Extremely cold and hot areas.
  - Drive on rough roads (bumpy roads, gravel roads, snow, etc.) for a long time.
  - Drive on mountain roads, uphill/downhill for a long time.
  - Drive the vehicle for a short distance frequently.
  - In many cases, drive in high temperature (higher than 32℃), heavy traffic urban road.
  - When used as a police car, taxi, commercial vehicle, trailer, etc.
- The air filter and air conditioning filter should be replaced more frequently if the vehicle drives under severe conditions mentioned in the following examples*.

*Examples of severe driving conditions:

- Drive in extremely cold and hot weather (only for engine oil, engine oil level, steering and suspension system).
- Drive the vehicle for a short distance frequently (only for engine oil, engine oil level, disc brake pads and discs/front and rear axle boots and axle shaft joint portions, brake lining and drums).
- Drive on dusty roads (only for air cleaner element, disc brake pads and discs/front and rear axle boots and axle shaft joint portions, brake lining and drums, air filter element for the climate control system).
- Drive on rough and/or muddy roads (only for disc brake pads and discs/front and rear axle boots and axle shaft joint portions, brake lining and drums, air filter element for the climate control system).
- Drive in areas where road salt or other corrosive materials are used (only for fuel system, lines and connections, disc brake pads and discs/front and rear axle boots and axle shaft joint portions, brake lining and drums,

⚠ CAUTION

inspect brake lines and check operations of parking and service brake system, steering and suspension system).

- In the coastal areas (only for fuel system, lines and connections, disc brake pads and discs/front and rear axle boots and axle shaft joint portions, brake lining and drums, inspect brake lines and check operations of parking and service brake system, steering and suspension system).

Technical Data

Fluid Name	Specification	After-sale Maintenance
Oil (SQRF4J16)	Castrol SN 5W-30 Castrol SP 5W-30	4.3 ± 0.2 L (replace the oil and oil filter at the same time)
Oil (SQRF4J20)	Fuchs C5 0W-20	4.0 ± 0.1 L (replace the oil and oil filter at the same time)
Oil (SQRD4T20)	SN 5W-40	4.7 ± 0.2 L (replace the oil and oil filter at the same time)
Transmission Fluid (730DHB)	Sinopec DCTF-GS	4.25 ± 0.2 L
Transmission Fluid (738DHA)	KunLun DCTF-7S	6.5 ± 0.2 L (replace the cooling module filter simultaneously)
Transmission Fluid (025CHC)	Royal Dutch Shell CVTF WCF-1	7.3 ± 0.2 L
Transfer gear oil (If Equipped)	SAF PD	0.5 L
Rear final drive oil (If Equipped)	SAF CARBON MOD	0.6 L
Coolant (SQRF4J16)	Full Organic Antifreeze (LEC-II)	7.5 ± 0.5 L
Coolant (SQRF4J20)	Full Organic Antifreeze (LEC-II)	7.5 ± 0.5 L
Coolant (SQRD4T20)	Full Organic Antifreeze (LEC-II)	7.0 ± 0.5 L
Brake Fluid	DOT4	/
Spark Plug	3707AAG	/

⚠ CAUTION

- Filling amount is equal to discharging amount when there is no oil leakage for automatic transmission, please go to Chery authorized service station for details.
- Only Chery genuine parts and fluids can be used, otherwise your claim rights will be affected.
- For engine oil and transmission fluid, only use brands and specifications recommended by Chery authorized service station.
- The above filling amount is only for reference. The specific filling amount should be based on the actual vehicle measurement.

SPECIFICATION

8-1. Label Location

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 308

Vehicle Product Label 309

Engine Number..... 309

Microwave Window 309

8-2. Vehicle Specifications

Vehicle Dimensions 310

Vehicle Type..... 311

Vehicle Weight..... 312

Vehicle Performance 313

Engine Performance..... 313

Fuel System 314

Cooling System 314

Suspension System..... 315

Steering System 315

Brake System..... 315

Wheel Alignment..... 316

Wheels and Tires 316

Battery..... 317

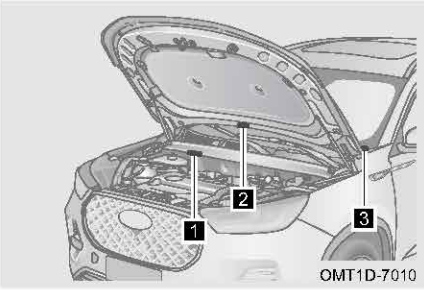
Light Bulb Specification..... 317

Measurement Range of Vehicle Overall Size except Following Components..... 319

8-1. Label Location

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

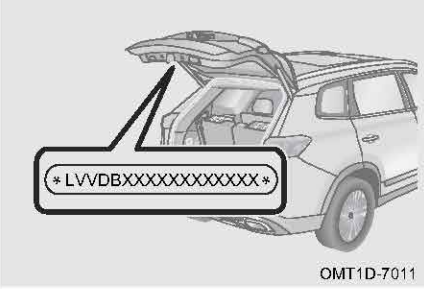
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) on actual vehicle



1 Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) is engraved on lower right of engine compartment drip channel garnish.

2 Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) label is located at the lower part of the hood.

3 Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) label is located on upper left of driver side instrument panel, and can be seen from the outside through the front windshield.



Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) label is located on back door as shown in the illustration.

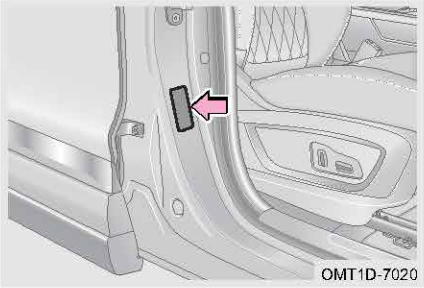
READ

- Due to regional differences, the location of VIN code shall be subject to the actual vehicle.
- If VIN needs to be read, it is recommended to read the data through the operation of Chery authorized service station professional serviceman.

CAUTION

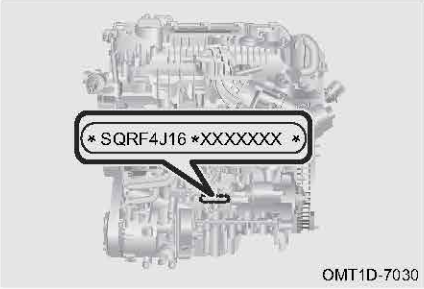
It is forbidden to cover, paint, weld, cut, drill or remove Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) and areas around it.

Vehicle Product Label



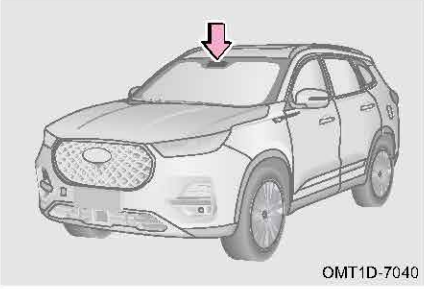
Vehicle product label is located on right quarter outer panel as shown in the illustration.

Engine Number



Engine number is located on engine block as shown in the illustration.

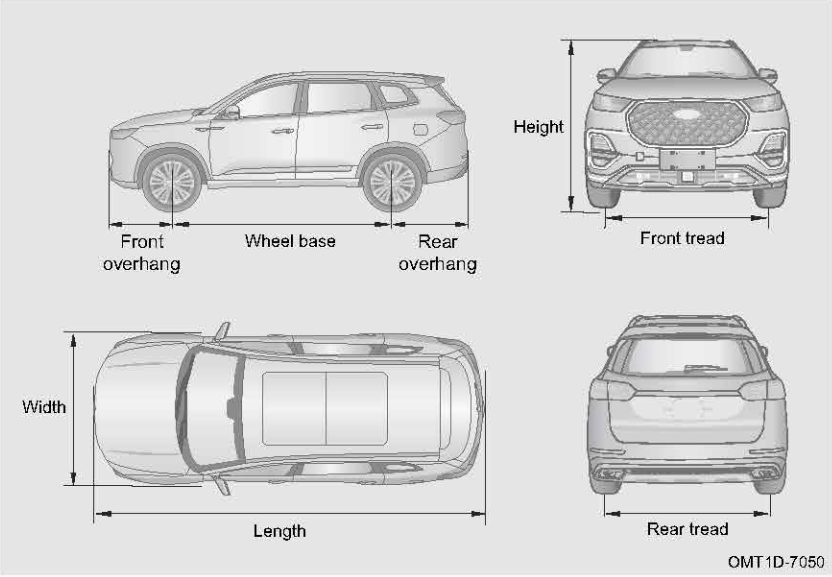
Microwave Window



The microwave window is located at right side on back of front windshield inside rear view mirror where is for wireless RF signal transmission and installation of automotive electronic identification.

8-2. Vehicle Specifications

Vehicle Dimensions



Overall Size	Length (mm)	4,722
	Width (mm)	1,860
	Height (mm)	1,705
Wheel Base (mm)		2,710
Tread	Front (mm)	1,582
	Rear (mm)	1,604
Overhang	Front (mm)	912
	Rear (mm)	1,100

Vehicle Type

Vehicle Type	4 × 2 front-wheel drive, front-wheel steering, transverse front-engine, two-compartment, five-door, five-seat or seven-seat, integral body, left-hand drive	4 × 4 AWD, front-wheel steering, transverse front-engine, two-compartment, five-door, five-seat or seven-seat, integral body, left-hand drive	4 × 2 front-wheel drive, front-wheel steering, transverse front-engine, three-box, five-door, five-seat or seven-seat, integral body, left-hand drive
Engine Model	SQRF4J16/ SQRF4J20	SQRF4J20	SQRD4T20
Engine Type	Vertical, 4-cylinder in-line, water-cooled, 4-stroke, double overhead camshaft, turbocharging, intercooler	Vertical, 4-cylinder in-line, water-cooled, 4-stroke, double overhead camshaft, turbocharging, intercooler	Vertical, 4-cylinder in-line, water-cooled, 4-stroke, double overhead camshaft, turbocharging, intercooler
Fuel Supply Type	Direct injection	Direct injection	Multiport sequential electronic gasoline injection
Transmission Model	730 DHB/738 DHA	738 DHA	025 CHC

Vehicle Weight

Vehicle Curb Weight (kg)		1,541	1,664	1,543
Vehicle Curb Axle Weight	Front Axle (kg)	865	931	886
	Rear Axle (kg)	676	733	657
Manufacturer Maximum Total Weight (kg)		2,143	2,283	2,143
Manufacturer Maximum Total Axle Weight	Front Axle (kg)	979	1,058	1,126
	Rear Axle (kg)	1,164	1,225	1,017
Seating Capacity (Including Driver) (Person)		5	5	5

Vehicle Curb Weight (kg)		1,565	1,713	1,580
Vehicle Curb Axle Weight	Front Axle (kg)	854	939	885
	Rear Axle (kg)	711	774	695
Manufacturer Maximum Total Weight (kg)		2,143	2,283	2,143
Manufacturer Maximum Total Axle Weight	Front Axle (kg)	993	1,053	1,000
	Rear Axle (kg)	1,150	1,230	1,143
Seating Capacity (Including Driver) (Person)		7	7	7

⚠ WARNING

Please follow the vehicle load specified in the instruction manual and do not exceed the allowable total weight. Otherwise, the brake and handling performance of the vehicle may change and may cause an personal injury and accident.

Vehicle Performance

Passing Performance	Minimum Ground Clearance (mm)		167/145	145
	Minimum Turning Diameter (m)	Left Turn (m)	11.2	11.2
		Right Turn (m)	11.2	11.2
	Approach Angle (°)		20	20
	Departure Angle (°)		17	17
	Ramp Angle	Unladen (°)	20	20
		Laden (°)	16	16
Power Performance	Maximum Vehicle Speed (km/h)		200	180
	Maximum Gradeability (%)		47	45

Engine Performance

Engine Mode	SQRF4J16	SQRF4J20	SQRD4T20
Cylinder Bore Diameter (mm)	77	80.5	83.5
Piston Stroke (mm)	85.8	98.12	90
Displacement (mL)	1,598	1,998	1,971
Compression Ratio	9.9:1	10.2：1	9.5:1
Maximum Net Power (kw)	136.5	180	125
Maximum Net Power Speed (r/min)	5,500	5,500	5,500
Maximum Net Torque (N•m)	275	375	250
Maximum Net Torque Speed (r/min)	2,000-4,000	2,000-4,000	2,000-4,500

Fuel System

Fuel Type*1	Unleaded gasoline with an octane number of 91 or higher	
	Unleaded gasoline with an octane number of 92 or higher	
	Unleaded gasoline with an octane number of 95 or higher (unleaded super gasoline)	
	E22-E100	
Fuel Tank Type	Plastic fuel tank	
Fuel Tank Total Capacity	51 L(SQRF4J16/ SQRD4T20)	57 L(SQRF4J20)
Fuel Pump	Electric fuel pump	

*1: Please use the fuel recommended by Chery authorized dealers.

READ

Vehicle with catalytic converters can only use unleaded gasoline. In order to avoid the accident of filling wrong fuel type, the fuel filler pipe adopts a neck-type fuel filler port design, and only the standard unleaded gasoline fuel gun can be used for fueling operation.

CAUTION

- Only use fuel type recommended by Chery.
- The use of off-specification gasoline may cause damage to the engine and such damage is not covered under warranty.
- Using leaded gasoline will cause three-way catalytic converter to lose its effectiveness and emission control system to function improperly.
- If you accidentally fill leaded gasoline to the oil tank and start the engine (-even if only a small amount is filled), it will cause permanent damage to the catalytic converter. Therefore, if you accidentally fill leaded gasoline, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

Cooling System

Engine Model	SQRF4J16/ SQRF4J20/ SQRD4T20
Radiator Type	Tube belt radiator

Suspension System

Front Suspension	Macpherson type independent suspension, unadjustable height, anti-roll stabilizer bar is equipped, cone coiled spring, double adjustable shock absorber
Rear Suspension	Multi-link type independent suspension, unadjustable height,equipped with anti-roll stabilizer bar, cone coiled spring, double adjustable shock absorber

Steering System

Power Steering Type		Electric power
Steering Wheel Diameter (mm)		387.5
Steering Gear Type		Rack & pinion steering gear
Steering Column Type		Retractable energy-absorbing steering column
Steering Wheel Adjustable Range	Up-down (mm)	34
	Front-back (mm)	40

Brake System

Foot Brake	Front Wheel	Disc brake
	Rear Wheel	Disc brake
Brake Booster		Vacuum booster
Parking Brake		Electric parking brake for rear wheels
Reasonable Range of Brake Pedal Free Travel		⩽ 25 mm
Reasonable Range of Use for Brake Friction Pair		Thickness of new front brake disc: 25 mm, use limit: 22.5 mm Thickness of new front brake plate friction material: 11 mm, use limit: 2 mm Thickness of new rear brake disc: 10 mm, use limit: 8 mm Thickness of new rear brake plate friction material: 10.2 mm, use limit: 2 mm

⚠ WARNING

- In the case of heavy load, the brake fluid should be replaced while the brake plates are being replaced.
- When adding brake fluid, make sure it is absolutely clean. If any dirt gets into the brake system, it may result in loss of braking performance.

Wheel Alignment

Front Wheel	Front Wheel Camber	-25′ ± 45′
	Kingpin Caster Angle	4°28′ ± 60′
	Kingpin Inclination Angle	13°43′ ± 60′
	Front Wheel Toe-in	5′ ± 5′
Rear Wheel	Rear Wheel Camber	-42′ ± 30′
	Rear Wheel Toe-in	5′ ± 10′
Sideslip Value		⩽ 3 m/km

Wheels and Tires

Tire Model		215/60R17; 235/55R18; 235/50R18; 235/50R19; T125/80R17 (Spare tire); T125/80D17 (Spare tire)
Rim Model		17X6.5J; 18X7.5J; 19X7J; 17×4T (-Spare tire)
Cold Tire Inflation Pressure (kPa) (Unladen)	Front Wheel	230
	Rear Wheel	230
	Spare Tire	420
Tightening Torque of Wheel bolts		130 ± 10 N·m
Wheel dynamic balance requirements for vehicle with a maximum design speed of more than 100 km/h		Allowable residual balanced mass: Clamp balance block side ⩽ 8 g, paste balance block side ⩽ 10 g
Chains can only be installed on front wheel and only be installed on specified tire, which also applies to four-wheel drive vehicle		The sizes of wheels and tires that can use chains are: 215/60R17

	The sizes that can use chains are: 17 X 6.5 J

READ

The tire inflation pressures listed in the table apply to cold tires. The pressure increases slightly when the tire is heated, but it is unnecessary to lower the pressure.

CAUTION

- Tire inflation pressure should be checked at least once a month, and tire pressure is especially important at high speeds.
- In order to facilitate you to find the specified value for inflation pressure, there is adhesive sticker label on the driver doorsill, which is marked with the specified value for cold tire inflation pressure.

Battery

Battery Model	12V 70Ah

Light Bulb Specification

Light Bulb Name	Nominal Light Source (Type/Model)	Replacement Advice
Headlights	LED	Replaced by Chery authorized service station
Front Fog Light	LED	Replaced by Chery authorized service station
Rear Fog Light	LED	Replaced by Chery authorized service station
Daytime Running Light	LED	Replaced by Chery authorized service station
Front Position Light	LED	Replaced by Chery authorized service station
Rear Position Light	LED	Replaced by Chery authorized service station

Light Bulb Name	Nominal Light Source (Type/Model)	Replacement Advice
Stop Light	LED	Replaced by Chery authorized service station
High Mounted Stoplight	LED	Replaced by Chery authorized service station
Back-up Light	LED	Replaced by Chery authorized service station
Front Turn Signal Light	LED	Replaced by Chery authorized service station
Side Turn Signal Light	4414AAY 605ACM	Replaced by Chery authorized service station
Rear Turn Signal Light	LED	Replaced by Chery authorized service station
License Plate Light	605ABW	Replaced by Chery authorized service station

Measurement Range of Vehicle Overall Size except Following Components

Components not included in vehicle length size

The following devices do not have laden function and their sizes are not more than 50 mm beyond the vehicle front end or rear end, and fillet radius of edge and corner is no less than 5 mm:

— Wiper and washer

— Outer identification, including registered trademark, manufacturer name, origin, model name and type, engine emission, transmission type, driving type and other distinguishing identification of the vehicle

— Lights and light signal device

— Anti-collision rubber block and equivalent

— External sunshade device

— Customs sealing device and its protective device

— Device used to fixed raincloth and its protective device

— Locking device, hinge, handle, controller, switch

— Step plate (or ladder), vehicle climbing step plate and handle on top of bumper used for cleaning windows.

— Rear emblem plate with LOGO

— Removable trailer or towing device

— Exhaust tail pipe

Components not included in vehicle width size:

— Indirect view device

— School bus stop plate in inoperative state

The following devices do not have laden function and their one side size exceeds the side of vehicle for no more than 50 mm, and fillet radius of edge and corner is no less than 5 mm:

— Outer identification, including registered trademark, manufacturer name, origin, model name and type, engine emission, transmission type, driving type and other distinguishing identification of the vehicle

— Lights and light signal device

— Anti-collision rubber block and equivalent

— Customs sealing device and its protective device

— Device used to fixed raincloth and its protective device

— Local water drain slot: Refers to the water drain slot used to guide rain flow above driver door (or window) and passenger door, both sides of front windshield

— Flexible protruding part of splash proof system

— Retractable step plate, entering/exiting slope of bus, lifting platform and equivalent that is in the retract state

— Locking device, hinge, handle, controller, switch

— Tire failure signal device

— Tire pressure indicator

— Deformed part of tire wall directly above contact point between tire and ground

— Reversing assistance device

— Exhaust tail pipe

Components not included in vehicle height size:

Soft part of antenna

Device without laden function:

— Intake duct

— Indirect view device

— Current collecting device of electric vehicle (including its fixing device)

— Vehicle rear air guide device is removable or folding, and its deployed and retracted length is no more than 2,000 mm and 200 mm respectively.

— Tailboard, entering/exiting slope and equivalent with a horizontal length not exceeding 300 mm in retract state

— Tail ladder

A

Active Speed Limit (ASL) (If Equipped) 234
Adaptive Cruise Control System (ACC) (If Equipped)..... 229
Adaptive Engine Control System 194
Adaptive Headlight System (AFS) (If Equipped) 76
Adjusting Steering Wheel..... 59
After Starting Engine 14
Air Conditioning Heating Operation..... 169
Air Conditioning Refrigeration Operation..... 166
Air Outlets Airflow Control 164
Airbag (SRS)..... 214
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) ... 262
Audio Button 133
Audio button (dual display)..... 146
Audio Operation 130
Audio Operation (Dual Display).. 142
Audio Setting 131
Audio setting (dual display) 143
Audio View 127
Audio View (Dual Display)..... 140
Automatic A/C (If Equipped) 155
Automatic Defogging Function (If Equipped)..... 165
Automatic Emergency Braking System (AEB)/Front Collision Warning System (FCW) (If Equipped) 245
Automatic Flip-down Function of Outside Rear View Mirror When Reversing (If Equipped) ... 63
Automatic Inside Rear View Mirror (If Equipped) 61
Automatic Parking System (-AUTO HOLD) 210
Automatic Transmission..... 195

B

Back Door Emergency Opening. 184
Battery 317
Before Starting Engine 13
Blind Spot Detection (BSD) System (If Equipped) 243
Blower Advancing Opening and Blower Delay Closing (If Equipped) 165
Brake System..... 315

C

Check the Exhaust System 16
Checking Air Conditioning Filter. 295
Checking Battery 295
Checking Brake Fluid Level..... 290
Checking Coolant Level..... 291
Checking Drive Belt..... 292
Checking Fuse 283
Checking Oil Level..... 289
Checking Radiator and Condenser 292
Checking Tires 293
Checking Transmission Fluid Level 290
Checking Windshield Washer Fluid..... 295
Checking Wiper Blades 296
Chery Authorized Service Station is at Your Service..... 286
Chery Delivery Card.....4
Child Restraint Systems.....95
Child-Protection Lock 119
Constant Speed Cruise System (CCS) (If Equipped)..... 227
Cooling System 314
Correct Sitting Posture 78
Cybersecurity Notice for Scrapping or Resale 22
Cybersecurity Support Service Update or Termination Notice.....21

D

Delivery Inspection Certificate 10
Door Lock Switch..... 117
Door Mechanical Switch 117
Door Open Warning (DOW) system (If Equipped)..... 244
Driving Mode (AWD) 201
Driving on Road Covered with Ice and Snow.....20

Driving Through Water..... 18

E

Easy Seat Access Function (If Equipped) 88
Effective Range..... 111
Electric Air Conditioning (If Equipped) 154
Electric Parking Brake (EPB) System 208
Electric Power Steering System (EPS)..... 207
Electric Steering Column Lock (Vehicle with Manual Transmission)..... 191
Electronic Stability Program (ESP) System..... 262
Emergency Rescue (If Equipped) 268
Emergency Towing 280
Engine Number 309
Engine Performance 313
ENGINE START STOP Switch... 190
Extended Function 264
Exterior Lighting 68

F

First Maintenance Information ... 298
Follow Me Home Function..... 74
Foot Brake..... 213
Front Seats 79
Fuel System..... 314
Fuel Tank Cap..... 184
Fuse Box..... 282

H

Hazard Light 269
Head Restraints..... 78
Heated Steering Wheel (If Equipped) 59
Hill Descent Control (HDC) System (If Equipped) 238
Horn 58
How to Read This Manual 2

I

Idling Stop-start System (If Equipped) 235
If Battery is Depleted..... 276
If Engine Coolant Temperature is High 275
If You Have a Flat Tire During Driving..... 270
If Your Vehicle Cannot Start Normally 278
Immobilizer System..... 115
Index 2
Information Display Area (12.3-inch) 41
Information Display Area (7-inch) . 27
Information display area (dual display)..... 50
Installing Child Restraint Systems 99
Installing Towing Eyelet 281
Instrument Cluster Overview (12.3-inch) 39
Instrument Cluster Overview (7-inch)..... 25
Instrument cluster view (dual display)..... 48
Intelligent High Beam Assist (IHC) (If Equipped) 76
Intelligent Timely All Wheel Drive System (AWD) (If Equipped) 200
Interior Lighting 73

K

Keyless Entry..... 113

L

Lane Assist System (If Equipped) 240
Lane Departure Warning System (LDW) (If Equipped) 241
Lane Keep Assist System (LKA) (If Equipped)..... 242
Light Bulb Specification 317
Light Fogging Instructions 77

M

Maintenance Schedule 299
Manual Back Door 178
Manual Inside Rear View Mirror ... 60
Measurement Range of Vehicle Overall Size except Following Components 319
Microwave Window..... 309
Moon Roof Jam Protection Function 127
Moon Roof Remote Control Function 126

N

New Vehicle Break-in 11
New Vehicle Inspection..... 10
Normal Maintenance 288
Normal Starting and Turning off . 192

O

Off-road Driving..... 17
Opening/closing the hood 178
Operation/Malfunction Indicator ... 54
Outside Rear View Mirror..... 61
Outside Rear View Mirror Memory Function (If Equipped) .. 63

P

Panoramic Moon Roof (Type A) . 124
Panoramic Moon Roof (Type B) . 125
Panoramic View Monitor (AVM) System (If Equipped)..... 254
Parking on Slope 15
Parking Operations 14
Parking Radar System (If Equipped) 257
Parking View Monitor System (RVC)..... 252
Particulate Filter (GPF) (if Equipped) 195
"Person-to-Person" Consultative Service Card 6
Phone-link 134, 148
Pictorial Index 2
Power Back Door (If Equipped).. 179
Power Outlet..... 175
Power Windows..... 119

R

Rear Collision Warning (RCW) system (If Equipped)..... 245
Rear Cross Traffic Alert (-RCTA) System (If Equipped) 245
Recommended Child Restraint Systems 97
Reflective Vest 269
Refrigeration Function of Armrest Box on Auxiliary Fascia Console (If Equipped) ... 165
Remote Starting for Smart Key (If Equipped)..... 116
Repair and Maintenance..... 286
Replacing Fuse 283

S

Safety Check 13, 287
Seat Belt Pretensioner (If Equipped) 94
Seat Belts.....89
Seat Heating Function (If Equipped) 85
Seat Memory Function (If Equipped) 86
Seat Ventilation Function (If Equipped) 86
Second Row Seat 82
Setting (12.3-inch) 42
Setting (7-inch).....29
Setting (dual display).....52
Smart Key 107
Smart Key Battery..... 109
Smart Key Vehicle Locating (If Equipped) 116
Smart Vehicle Locating Function .. 75
Spare Tools 270
Speed Limit Assist System (SLA) (If Equipped)..... 225
Starting and Turning off in Emergency..... 193
Steering System 315
Storage Space 170

Sun Visors and Vanity Mirrors.... 177
Suspension System 315
Symbols in the Manual 2

T

Table of Contents.....2
Technical Data 305
Third Row Seat (If Equipped)..... 84
Tire Chains 20
Tire Inflation Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) (If Equipped) 250
Tire Rotation 294
TOP TETHER Upper Fixing Point 98
Towing Vehicle 279
Traffic Jam Assist System (TJA)/Integrated Cruise Assist System (ICA) (If Equipped) 248
Traffic Sign Recognition (TSR) System (If Equipped) 225

U

Unlocking Doors with Inside Handle..... 117
USB Port 176
User Registration Certificate.....3

V

Vacuum Booster 212
Vehicle Dimensions..... 310
Vehicle Fortifying 114
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 308
Vehicle Performance 313
Vehicle Product Label..... 309
Vehicle Type 311
Vehicle Weight 312
Voice recognition function (if equipped) 147
Voice Recognition Function (If Equipped) 133

W

Warning Triangle 270
Wheel Alignment 316
Wheels and Tires..... 316
When Driving 14
When Driving on Slippery Road Surfaces..... 18
Window Jam Protection Function (If Equipped)..... 122
Window Remote Control Function 121
Winter Driving Tips..... 19
Wiper Blade Replacement..... 67
Wiper Nozzle Heating Function (If Equipped)..... 67
Wiper Operation 64
Wireless Charging (If Equipped) 169